

System Administration Reference

Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management SP1

10.1

August 6, 2008

www.novell.com



Legal Notices

Novell, Inc., makes no representations or warranties with respect to the contents or use of this documentation, and specifically disclaims any express or implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose. Further, Novell, Inc., reserves the right to revise this publication and to make changes to its content, at any time, without obligation to notify any person or entity of such revisions or changes.

Further, Novell, Inc., makes no representations or warranties with respect to any software, and specifically disclaims any express or implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose. Further, Novell, Inc., reserves the right to make changes to any and all parts of Novell software, at any time, without any obligation to notify any person or entity of such changes.

Any products or technical information provided under this Agreement may be subject to U.S. export controls and the trade laws of other countries. You agree to comply with all export control regulations and to obtain any required licenses or classification to export, re-export or import deliverables. You agree not to export or re-export to entities on the current U.S. export exclusion lists or to any embargoed or terrorist countries as specified in the U.S. export laws. You agree to not use deliverables for prohibited nuclear, missile, or chemical biological weaponry end uses. See the [Novell International Trade Services Web page \(http://www.novell.com/info/exports/\)](http://www.novell.com/info/exports/) for more information on exporting Novell software. Novell assumes no responsibility for your failure to obtain any necessary export approvals.

Copyright © 2007-2009 Novell, Inc. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, photocopied, stored on a retrieval system, or transmitted without the express written consent of the publisher.

Novell, Inc., has intellectual property rights relating to technology embodied in the product that is described in this document. In particular, and without limitation, these intellectual property rights may include one or more of the U.S. patents listed on the [Novell Legal Patents Web page \(http://www.novell.com/company/legal/patents/\)](http://www.novell.com/company/legal/patents/) and one or more additional patents or pending patent applications in the U.S. and in other countries.

Novell, Inc.
404 Wyman Street, Suite 500
Waltham, MA 02451
U.S.A.
www.novell.com

Online Documentation: To access the latest online documentation for this and other Novell products, see the [Novell Documentation Web page \(http://www.novell.com/documentation\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation).

Novell Trademarks

For Novell trademarks, see [the Novell Trademark and Service Mark list \(http://www.novell.com/company/legal/trademarks/tmlist.html\)](http://www.novell.com/company/legal/trademarks/tmlist.html).

Third-Party Materials

All third-party trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Contents

About This Guide	11
1 ZENworks Control Center	13
1.1 Accessing ZENworks Control Center	13
1.2 Accessing ZENworks Control Center through Novell iManager.	14
1.3 Navigating ZENworks Control Center	15
1.4 Changing the Default Login Disable Values.	16
1.5 Changing the Timeout Value for ZENworks Control Center.	16
1.6 Using the Config.xml File to Modify ZENworks Control Center Settings	18
2 Administrators	19
2.1 Managing Administrator Accounts	19
2.1.1 Creating Administrators	20
2.1.2 Deleting Administrators	21
2.1.3 Renaming Administrators	21
2.1.4 Changing Administrator Passwords.	21
2.2 Managing Administrator Rights	22
2.2.1 Assigning Super Administrator Rights	22
2.2.2 Assigning Additional Rights	22
2.2.3 Modifying Assigned Rights	23
2.2.4 Removing Assigned Rights	23
2.3 Rights Descriptions	23
2.3.1 Administrator Rights	24
2.3.2 Bundle Rights	24
2.3.3 Contract Management Rights	25
2.3.4 Device Rights.	25
2.3.5 Document Rights	26
2.3.6 Inventoried Device Rights	27
2.3.7 License Management Rights	27
2.3.8 Policy Rights	28
2.3.9 Quick Task Rights	29
2.3.10 Remote Management Rights	29
2.3.11 Reporting Rights	30
2.3.12 User Rights	30
2.3.13 ZENworks User Group Rights	31
2.3.14 Zone Rights	31
2.4 Managing Administrator Roles	32
2.4.1 Understanding Administrator Roles	32
2.4.2 Creating a Role	35
2.4.3 Assigning Roles	37
2.4.4 Editing a Role	41
2.4.5 Renaming a Role	44
2.4.6 Deleting a Role	44
3 ZENworks Server	45
3.1 ZENworks Services on a Windows Server.	45
3.1.1 Checking the Status of a ZENworks Service	46
3.1.2 Starting a ZENworks Service.	46

3.1.3	Stopping a ZENworks Service	46
3.2	ZENworks Services on a Linux Server	47
3.2.1	Checking the Status of a ZENworks Service	48
3.2.2	Starting a ZENworks Service	48
3.2.3	Stopping a ZENworks Service	48
3.2.4	Restarting a ZENworks Service	48
3.3	Configuring Additional Access to a ZENworks Server	48
3.3.1	Addressing Non-Detectable IP Address Conditions	49
3.3.2	Addressing Non-Detectable DNS Name Conditions	49
3.4	Uninstalling a ZENworks Server	50
4	Satellites	51
4.1	Understanding the Satellite Roles	51
4.1.1	Understanding the Imaging Role	51
4.1.2	Understanding the Collection Role	52
4.1.3	Understanding the Content Role	52
4.2	Adding Satellites into the Server Hierarchy	53
4.3	Removing Satellites from the Server Hierarchy	55
4.4	Configuring Satellites from the Server Hierarchy	56
4.5	Configuring Satellites from the Device View	58
4.6	Specifying Content to Be Hosted	61
4.7	Specifying a Different Repository for the Content Role Satellite (Windows Only)	61
4.8	Troubleshooting Satellites	62
5	Server Hierarchy	65
5.1	Primary Servers: Peer Versus Parent/Child Relationships	65
5.2	Satellite Role Relationships	65
5.2.1	Content Role Server Relationships	66
5.2.2	Collection Role Server Relationships	66
5.2.3	Imaging Role Server Relationships	66
5.3	Changing the Parent-Child Relationships of Primary Servers	66
5.3.1	Making a Primary Server a Child	66
5.3.2	Making a Primary Server a Peer	67
6	ZENworks Adaptive Agent	69
6.1	Configuring Adaptive Agent Settings	69
6.1.1	Configuring Agent Settings on the Management Zone Level	70
6.1.2	Configuring Agent Settings on the Device Folder Level	71
6.1.3	Configuring Agent Settings on the Device Level	71
6.1.4	ZENworks Agent Settings	72
6.2	Configuring ZENworks Explorer	75
6.2.1	Configuring ZENworks Explorer Settings on the Management Zone Level	76
6.2.2	Configuring ZENworks Explorer Settings on the Device Folder Level	76
6.2.3	Configuring ZENworks Explorer Settings on the Device Level	77
6.2.4	ZENworks Explorer General Settings	78
6.3	Troubleshooting the Adaptive Agent	78
7	Content Repository	81
7.1	Changing the Location of the Content Repository on a Windows Server	81
7.2	Changing the Location of the Content Repository on a Linux Server	82
7.2.1	Mounting a Share	83

7.2.2	Unmounting a Share	83
7.2.3	Creating a Permanent Mount	83
7.2.4	Moving Existing Content to the New Repository	84
8	Content Replication	85
8.1	Replicating Content to New Content Servers	85
8.2	Including or Excluding Content	86
8.2.1	Managing a Single Piece of Content on Multiple Content Servers	86
8.2.2	Managing Multiple Pieces of Content on a Single Content Server	87
8.2.3	Managing Multiple Pieces of Content on Multiple Content Servers	87
8.3	Modifying the Replication Schedule	88
8.4	Throttling the Content Replication Rate	89
9	Content Delivery	91
9.1	Setting Up Closest Server Rules	91
9.1.1	Understanding Closest Server Rules	91
9.1.2	Configuring the Closest Server Default Rule	93
9.1.3	Creating Closest Server Rules	97
9.2	Scheduling Delivery Blackout Dates	102
9.3	Setting the Device Refresh Schedule	103
10	User Sources	107
10.1	Prerequisites	107
10.2	Adding a User Source	107
10.3	Deleting a User Source	110
10.4	Adding a Container from a User Source	111
10.5	Providing LDAP Load Balancing and Fault Tolerance	111
11	User Authentication	113
11.1	User Source Authentication	113
11.2	Credential Storage	113
11.3	Disabling ZENworks User Authentication	114
11.4	Troubleshooting User Authentication	114
12	Credential Vault	119
12.1	Adding a Credential	120
12.2	Creating a Folder for Credentials	121
12.3	Assigning Credential Rights	122
12.4	Editing a Credential	122
12.5	Renaming a Credential	122
12.6	Copying a Credential	122
12.7	Moving a Credential to Another Folder	123
12.8	Removing a Credential	123
13	ZENworks System Updates	125
13.1	Configuring Updates	126
13.1.1	Configuring System Update Settings	126
13.1.2	Creating Deployment Stages	134

13.2	Managing Update Downloads	142
13.2.1	Understanding Available Updates	142
13.2.2	Downloading Updates	143
13.2.3	Downloading and Installing the PRU	145
13.3	Deploying Updates	146
13.3.1	Understanding Deploying Updates	146
13.3.2	Deploying Updates	148
13.3.3	Starting the Pending Stage	154
13.3.4	Rescheduling a Deployment	155
13.3.5	Bypassing Staging	155
13.3.6	Canceling a Deployment	155
13.3.7	Clearing an Error to Retry a Deployment	156
13.3.8	Viewing Status by Device	156
13.4	Deleting Updates	160
13.5	Reviewing the Content of an Update	160
13.5.1	Update Release Details	161
13.5.2	Deployment History	162
13.6	Update Statuses	163

14 Database Maintenance

167

14.1	Retrieving and Storing the Credentials of the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database	168
14.2	Changing the Ports Used by the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database	168
14.3	Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database	169
14.3.1	Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database on a Windows or Linux Server	170
14.3.2	Backing up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Running on a Windows Server to a Network Location on a Remote Windows Machine	171
14.3.3	Backing up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Running on a Linux Server to a Network Location on a Remote Linux Machine	173
14.4	Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database	175
14.4.1	Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database on a Windows Server	175
14.4.2	Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database on a Linux Server	176
14.5	Moving the Data from an Embedded Sybase Database to an External Sybase Database	177
14.5.1	Preparing to Move the Data	177
14.5.2	Moving the Data from the Internal Sybase to the External Sybase	177
14.6	Moving the Data from One External Sybase Database to another External Sybase Database	178
14.6.1	Preparing to Move the Data	179
14.6.2	Moving the Data from One External Sybase to Another External Sybase	179
14.7	Migrating the Data from an Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere to an External Oracle Database	180
14.7.1	Preparing to Move the Data	181
14.7.2	Migrating the Data from the Sybase SQL Anywhere Database to an Oracle Database	182
14.7.3	Post-Migration Tasks	184
14.7.4	Troubleshooting Database Migration	185
14.7.5	Reverting to the Sybase Database	187
14.8	Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New MS SQL Database Containing Data Moved from Another MS SQL Database	187
14.8.1	Preparing to Move the Data	188
14.8.2	Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New MS SQL Database	188
14.9	Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New Oracle Database Containing Data Moved from Another Oracle Database	188
14.9.1	Preparing to Move the Data	189
14.9.2	Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New Oracle Database	189

15 ZENworks Server and Certificate Authority Backup and Restore	191
15.1 Backing Up a ZENworks Server	191
15.2 Restoring a ZENworks Server	192
15.3 Backing Up the Certificate Authority	193
15.4 Restoring the Certificate Authority	193
16 System Variables	195
16.1 Understanding System Variables	195
16.2 Adding System Variables	196
16.3 Removing System Variables	197
16.4 Editing System Variables	197
16.5 Using System Variables	197
17 Disaster Recovery	199
17.1 Replacing the First Primary Server with the Second Primary Server	199
17.2 Replacing an Existing Primary Server with a New Primary Server	202
A Management Zone Configuration Settings	205
A.1 Accessing Configuration Settings	205
A.1.1 Modifying Configuration Settings at the Zone	205
A.1.2 Modifying Configuration Settings on a Folder	207
A.1.3 Modifying Configuration Settings on a Device	208
A.2 Content Settings	209
A.3 Device Management Settings	209
A.4 Discovery and Deployment Settings	210
A.5 Event and Messaging Settings	211
A.6 Infrastructure Management Settings	211
A.7 Inventory Settings	211
A.8 Reporting Services Settings	212
A.9 Asset Management Settings	213
A.10 Patch Management Services Settings	213
B Naming Conventions in ZENworks Control Center	215

About This Guide

This *System Administration Reference* provides information about general administrative tasks required to manage your Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management with SP1 (10.1) system. The information in this guide is organized as follows:

- ♦ Chapter 1, “ZENworks Control Center,” on page 13
- ♦ Chapter 2, “Administrators,” on page 19
- ♦ Chapter 3, “ZENworks Server,” on page 45
- ♦ Chapter 4, “Satellites,” on page 51
- ♦ Chapter 5, “Server Hierarchy,” on page 65
- ♦ Chapter 6, “ZENworks Adaptive Agent,” on page 69
- ♦ Chapter 7, “Content Repository,” on page 81
- ♦ Chapter 8, “Content Replication,” on page 85
- ♦ Chapter 9, “Content Delivery,” on page 91
- ♦ Chapter 10, “User Sources,” on page 107
- ♦ Chapter 11, “User Authentication,” on page 113
- ♦ Chapter 12, “Credential Vault,” on page 119
- ♦ Chapter 13, “ZENworks System Updates,” on page 125
- ♦ Chapter 14, “Database Maintenance,” on page 167
- ♦ Chapter 15, “ZENworks Server and Certificate Authority Backup and Restore,” on page 191
- ♦ Chapter 16, “System Variables,” on page 195
- ♦ Chapter 17, “Disaster Recovery,” on page 199
- ♦ Appendix A, “Management Zone Configuration Settings,” on page 205
- ♦ Appendix B, “Naming Conventions in ZENworks Control Center,” on page 215

Audience

This guide is intended for ZENworks administrators.

Feedback

We want to hear your comments and suggestions about this manual and the other documentation included with this product. Please use the User Comments feature at the bottom of each page of the online documentation, or go to the [Novell Documentation Feedback site \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/feedback.html\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/feedback.html) and enter your comments there.

Additional Documentation

ZENworks Configuration Management is supported by other documentation (in both PDF and HTML formats) that you can use to learn about and implement the product. For additional documentation, see the [ZENworks 10 Configuration Management with SP1 \(10.1\) documentation \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/zcm10/index.html\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/zcm10/index.html).

Documentation Conventions

In Novell documentation, a greater-than symbol (>) is used to separate actions within a step and items in a cross-reference path.

A trademark symbol (® , ™ , etc.) denotes a Novell trademark. An asterisk (*) denotes a third-party trademark.

When a single pathname can be written with a backslash for some platforms or a forward slash for other platforms, the pathname is presented with a backslash. Users of platforms that require a forward slash, such as Linux*, should use forward slashes as required by your software.

ZENworks Control Center

1

You use ZENworks® Control Center to configure system settings and perform management tasks in your Management Zone.

ZENworks Control Center is installed on all ZENworks Servers in the Management Zone. You can perform all management tasks on any ZENworks Server.

The following sections provide information about using ZENworks Control Center:

- ♦ [Section 1.1, “Accessing ZENworks Control Center,” on page 13](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.2, “Accessing ZENworks Control Center through Novell iManager,” on page 14](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.3, “Navigating ZENworks Control Center,” on page 15](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.4, “Changing the Default Login Disable Values,” on page 16](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.5, “Changing the Timeout Value for ZENworks Control Center,” on page 16](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.6, “Using the Config.xml File to Modify ZENworks Control Center Settings,” on page 18](#)

1.1 Accessing ZENworks Control Center

- 1 Using a Web browser that meets the requirements listed in “[Administration Browser Requirements](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*, enter the following URL:

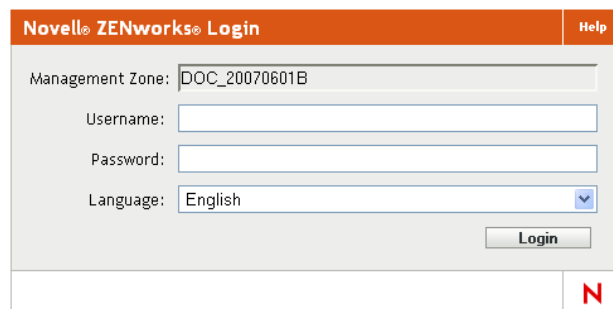
```
https://ZENworks_Server_Address
```

Replace *ZENworks_Server_Address* with the IP address or DNS name of the ZENworks Server. ZENworks Control Center requires an HTTPS connection; HTTP requests are redirected to HTTPS.

If you are not using the default ports (80 and 443), you must add them manually. For example:

```
https://ZENworks_Server_Address:443
```

The login dialog box is displayed.

The image shows the Novell ZENworks Login dialog box. It has an orange header bar with the text "Novell ZENworks Login" and a "Help" button. Below the header, there are four input fields: "Management Zone:" with the value "DOC_20070601B", "Username:" (empty), "Password:" (empty), and "Language:" with a dropdown menu showing "English". A "Login" button is located at the bottom right of the input fields. At the bottom right of the dialog box, there is a red "N" logo.

- 2 In the *Username* field, type Administrator (the default) or an administrator name that you [previously created](#) in ZENworks Control Center.

3 In the *Password* field, do one of the following:

- ♦ If you are logging in using the default administrator account, specify the administrator password that you created during installation.
- ♦ Specify the password for the administrator name that you created in ZENworks Control Center.

To prevent unauthorized users from gaining access to ZENworks Control Center, the administrator account is disabled after three unsuccessful login attempts, and a 60-second timeout is enforced before you can attempt another login. To change these default values, see [Section 1.4, “Changing the Default Login Disable Values,” on page 16](#).

4 Click *Login* to display ZENworks Control Center.

5 To re-log in as a different administrator, in ZENworks Control Center, click the *Logout* option in the upper right corner of the window, then when the login dialog box is displayed, log in as a different administrator.

The *Logout* option includes as part of the option the name of the administrator that is logged in. For example, *Logout John*.

1.2 Accessing ZENworks Control Center through Novell iManager

ZENworks 10 Configuration Management includes a Novell® plug-in module (.npm) that you can use to access ZENworks Control Center from Novell iManager, which is a management console used by many Novell products.

The ZENworks Control Center plug-in supports iManager 2.7 only. It does not support iManager 2.6 or 2.5; it will install to these versions but does not work.

To install the ZENworks Control Center plug-in for iManager:

1 On the server where iManager is located (or on a device that has access to the iManager server), open a Web browser to the ZENworks download page:

`https://server/zenworks-setup`

where *server* is the DNS name or IP address of a ZENworks Server.

2 In the left navigation pane, click *Administrative Tools*.

3 Click *zcc.npm* and save the file to a location on the iManager server.

4 Follow the instructions in the [Novell iManager 2.7 Administration Guide \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/imanager27/imanager_admin_27/data/b8qrsq0.html\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/imanager27/imanager_admin_27/data/b8qrsq0.html) to install and configure the plug-in module.

5 Log into iManager.

6 Click the ZENworks icon at the top of the page.

7 Enter the ZENworks Control Center URL:

`https://ZENworks_Server_Address`

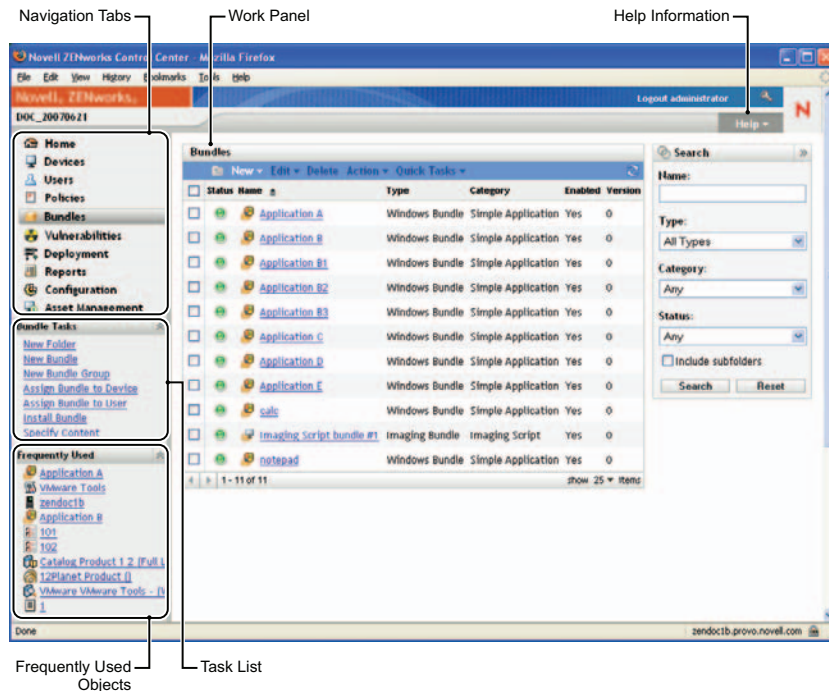
Replace *ZENworks_Server_Address* with the IP address or DNS name of the ZENworks Server.

8 Click the ZENworks icon to launch ZENworks Control Center.

1.3 Navigating ZENworks Control Center

The following Bundles page represents a standard view in ZENworks Control Center:

Figure 1-1 *ZENworks Control Center*



Navigation Tabs: The tabs in the left pane let you navigate among the functional areas of ZENworks. For example, the Bundles page shown above lets you manage tasks associated with software distribution and imaging.

Task List: The task list in the left pane provides quick access to the most commonly performed tasks for the current page. The task list changes for each page. For example, the task list on the Bundles page displays bundle-related tasks and the task list on the Devices page displays device-related tasks.

Frequently Used Objects: The Frequently Used list in the left pane displays the 10 objects that you have accessed most often, from most used to least used. Clicking an object takes you directly to the details page for the object.

Work Panel: The work panels are where you monitor and manage your ZENworks system. The panels change depending on the current page. In the above example, there are two work panels: Bundles and Search. The Bundles panel lists the software and imaging bundles that have been created; you use this panel to manage the bundles. The Search panel lets you filter the Bundles panel based on criteria such as a bundle's name, type, category, or status.

Help Information: The *Help* button links to Help topics that provide information about the current page. The *Help* button links change depending on the current page.

1.4 Changing the Default Login Disable Values

You can change the number of login tries and the timeout length for when a login is disabled by editing a configuration file. The changes are only applied to the instance of ZENworks Control Center being run from the server where you open and modify the configuration file. To make the change applicable to all ZENworks Primary Servers, you must make the same change in each of server's copy of this file.

IMPORTANT: Login attempts per administrator account are maintained in the ZENworks database, and there is only one ZENworks database per Management Zone. Therefore, if a particular administrator unsuccessfully attempts a login in one Primary Server, that administrator is kept from logging in to other Primary Servers in the zone. The interval that the administrator account is kept from logging in again is determined by the configuration on the server where the login attempts failed.

To modify the login tries and timeout values:

- 1 In a text editor, open the following file:

Windows:

`installation_location\novell\zenworks\conf\datamodel\zdm.xml`

Linux: `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel/zdm.xml`

- 2 Add the following lines into the file:

```
<entry key="allowedLoginAttempts">5</entry>
```

```
<entry key="lockedOutTime">300</entry>
```

The 5 in this example represents the number of retries before disabling login, and the 300 represents the number of seconds (the default is 60 seconds, or 1 minute).

Keep in mind that the longer the delay before allowing a re-login after the configured number of failures (such as 5), the longer your authorized administrators must wait to access ZENworks Control Center.

IMPORTANT: If you enter 0 as the login attempts value, the lockout functionality is disabled, allowing unlimited attempts at logging in.

- 3 Save the file, then restart the zenloader and zenserver services on the Primary Server to make the changes effective.

For instructions on restarting the services, see [Section 3.2.4, “Restarting a ZENworks Service,” on page 48](#).

1.5 Changing the Timeout Value for ZENworks Control Center

By default, ZENworks Control Center has a 30-minute timeout value, so if you leave ZENworks Control Center idle on your computer for more than 30 minutes, you are prompted to log in again to continue.

The purpose of the timeout is to clear memory resources. The larger the timeout value, the longer ZENworks Control Center retains the memory resources, which might have a negative impact on the long-term performance of the device from which you have launched ZENworks Control Center, including the ZENworks Server if you have it running locally on it.

To increase or decrease the timeout value, you modify two XML files on the ZENworks Server. The change applies only to that server's ZENworks Control Center. Therefore, any devices that launch ZENworks Control Center from that server experience the same timeout value.

You can make the ZENworks Control Center timeout value different on each ZENworks Server in the Management Zone.

To change the ZENworks Control Center timeout value on a ZENworks Server:

- 1 On the ZENworks Server, open the `config.xml` file in a text editor.
 - ♦ **Windows:** `\Novell\ZENworks\share\tomcat\webapps\zenworks\WEB-INF\config.xml`
 - ♦ **Linux:** `/opt/novell/zenworks/share/tomcat/webapps/zenworks/WEB-INF/config.xml`
- 2 Locate the `<setting id="timeout">` entry.
- 3 Increase or decrease the timeout value, as needed.

Specify the timeout value in minutes.
- 4 Save the `config.xml` file.
- 5 Open the `custom-config.xml` file in a text editor.

This file was added beginning with version 10.1.1 of ZENworks 10 Configuration Management. This allows you to maintain customizations of ZENworks Control Center because information contained in this file overrides any corresponding information in the `config.xml` file. Therefore, changes made in this file are not lost when the `config.xml` file gets overwritten during software updates or upgrades.

The `custom-config.xml` file is located in the same directory as the `config.xml` file:

 - ♦ **Windows:** `\Novell\ZENworks\share\tomcat\webapps\zenworks\WEB-INF\custom-config.xml`
 - ♦ **Linux:** `/opt/novell/zenworks/share/tomcat/webapps/zenworks/WEB-INF/custom-config.xml`
- 6 Locate the `<setting id="timeout">` entry.
- 7 Set the timeout value to the same number as you entered in the `config.xml` file.
- 8 Save the `custom-config.xml` file.
- 9 Restart the ZENworks Server by restarting the `zen-server` service.

For instructions, see [Chapter 3, “ZENworks Server,”](#) on page 45.

1.6 Using the Config.xml File to Modify ZENworks Control Center Settings

In addition to enabling you to configure the timeout value for the ZENworks Control Center (see [Section 1.5, “Changing the Timeout Value for ZENworks Control Center,” on page 16](#)), the `config.xml` file lets you control several additional configuration settings. However, with the exception of the timeout value, you should not need to modify the `config.xml` settings. In some cases, you should not modify a setting unless instructed by Novell Support.

- 1 On the ZENworks Server, open the `config.xml` file in a text editor.
 - ♦ **Windows server path:** `\Novell\ZENworks\share\tomcat\webapps\zenworks\WEB-INF\config.xml`
 - ♦ **Linux server path:** `opt/novell/zenworks/share/tomcat/webapps/zenworks/WEB-INF/config.xml`
- 2 Modify the desired setting. All settings begin with `<setting id=`.
 - timeout:** Specify the timeout value in minutes. The larger the timeout value, the longer ZENworks Control Center retains the memory resources, which might have a negative impact on the long-term performance of the device where you have launched ZENworks Control Center. If you change this value after upgrading to version 10.1.1 of ZENworks 10 Configuration Management, you must also change the timeout entry in the `custom-config.xml` file. See [Section 1.5, “Changing the Timeout Value for ZENworks Control Center,” on page 16](#)).
 - debug.enabled:** Change the value to *false* if you do not want any messages written to the ZENworks Control Center log files. The default value, *true*, causes messages to be written to the log files.
 - debug.tags:** These settings control debug information. You should not change them unless instructed by Novell Support.
 - debug.log.viewstate:** This setting controls debug information. You should not change it unless instructed by Novell Support.
 - hideGettingStarted:** Suppresses the Getting Started page. This setting is not functional at this time. To manually suppress the page, open the ZENworks Control Center, display the Getting Started page, then select *Do not show me this again*.
 - noQuickTaskAutoRefresh:** This setting disables automatic refreshing of the QuickTask status dialog box. It is used to discover issues with QuickTask status updates. You should not change this setting unless instructed by Novell Support.
- 3 Save the `config.xml` file.
- 4 Restart the ZENworks Server by restarting the `zen-server` service. See [Chapter 3, “ZENworks Server,” on page 45](#) for instructions.

Administrators

2

During installation of Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management, a default ZENworks administrator account (named Administrator) is created. This account provides rights to administer your Management Zone.

You can create additional administrator accounts that provide various levels of access to the Management Zone. For example, you could create an administrator account that enables the administrator to assign bundles to devices, but doesn't allow the administrator to create bundles. Or, you could create an administrator account that allows access to all management tasks, except those pertaining to your Management Zone configuration (user sources, registration, configuration settings, and so forth).

You can also assign roles to administrators that you create in the Administrators panel on the *Configuration* tab. These roles allow you to configure specific rights that define administrator functions.

You can use ZENworks Control Center (ZCC) or the zman command line utility to create and modify administrator accounts and assign roles. The following procedures explain how to perform these tasks by using ZCC. If you prefer the zman command line utility, see “[Administrator Commands](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

- ♦ [Section 2.1, “Managing Administrator Accounts,” on page 19](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.2, “Managing Administrator Rights,” on page 22](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3, “Rights Descriptions,” on page 23](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4, “Managing Administrator Roles,” on page 32](#)

2.1 Managing Administrator Accounts

The following sections help you create and manage administrator accounts:

- ♦ [Section 2.1.1, “Creating Administrators,” on page 20](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.1.2, “Deleting Administrators,” on page 21](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.1.3, “Renaming Administrators,” on page 21](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.1.4, “Changing Administrator Passwords,” on page 21](#)

2.1.1 Creating Administrators

To create an administrator account:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.

The screenshot shows the ZENworks Control Center interface with the Configuration tab selected. The left sidebar contains several expandable sections: Management Zone Settings, Server Hierarchy, Administrators, User Sources, and Licenses. The Administrators section is expanded, showing a sub-menu with 'New', 'Edit', and 'Delete' options. Below the sub-menu is a table with columns 'Name', 'Full Name', and 'Username in User Source'. The table is currently empty, displaying the message 'No items available.'.

- 2 In the Administrators panel, click *New* to display the Add New Administrator dialog box.

The screenshot shows the 'Add new Administrator' dialog box. It has a title bar with a question mark and a close button. The main content area contains two radio buttons for creating an administrator. The first option, 'Create a new Administrator providing name and password.', is selected. Below this option are four text input fields: 'Administrator Name:', 'Full Name:', 'Password:', and 'Retype Password:'. The second option, 'Based on user(s) in a user source', is unselected. Below this option is a text box with the message 'No items selected, click add to select items'. At the bottom of the dialog, there is a checkbox labeled 'Give this Administrator the same rights as I have.' and two buttons: 'OK' and 'Cancel'.

The Add New Administrator dialog box lets you create a new administrator account by providing a name and password, or you can create a new administrator based on an existing user in the user source. Optionally, you can give the new administrator the same rights that the logged-in administrator has.

- 3 Fill in the fields:

Create a New Administrator by Providing Name, Password: Select this option if you want to create a new administrator account by manually specifying the name and password.

Administrator login names with Unicode* characters are case-sensitive. Make sure that you use the correct case for each character in the login name when it contains Unicode characters.

The new administrator can change the password the first time he or she logs in by clicking the key icon located next to the *Logout* link in the upper right corner of ZENworks Control Center.

Based on User(s) in a User Source: Select this option if you want to create a new administrator account based on information from your user source. To do so, click *Add*, then browse for and select the user you want.

The newly created administrator account is granted View rights to all objects in the Management Zone. To grant additional rights, or to limit the administrator's rights to specific folders only, you need to **modify the rights**.

Give this Administrator the Same Rights as I Have: Select this option if you want to assign the new administrator the same rights that you have as the currently-logged in administrator.

- 4 When you have finished filling in the fields, click *OK* to add the new administrator.

You can also use the `admin-create` command in `zman` to create an administrator account. For more information, see “**Administrator Commands**” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

2.1.2 Deleting Administrators

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Administrators panel, select the check box next to the administrator's name, then click *Delete*.

You can also use the `admin-delete` command in `zman` to delete an administrator account. For more information, see “**Administrator Commands**” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

2.1.3 Renaming Administrators

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Administrators panel, select the check box next to the administrator's name, click *Edit*, then click *Rename*.
- 3 Specify the new name, then click *OK*.

You can also use the `admin-rename` command in `zman` to rename an administrator account. For more information, see “**Administrator Commands**” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.


2.1.4 Changing Administrator Passwords

To change the password for the administrator accounts that are created after the ZENworks Configuration Management was installed:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Administrators panel, select the check box next to the administrator, click *Edit*, then click *Set Password* to display the Change Administrator Password Dialog box.
- 3 Fill in the fields, then click *OK*.

IMPORTANT: Ensure that you create an additional Super Administrator account that you can use if the Management Zone password for the user with the administrator username is lost. For more information on how to create a Super Administrator account, see [Section 2.2.1, “Assigning Super Administrator Rights,” on page 22](#). If you need any further help, contact [Novell Support \(http://www.novell.com/support\)](http://www.novell.com/support).

To change the password for the currently logged-in administrator user:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the  icon located next to the *Logout Administrator* option in the top right corner.
The Change Administrator Password dialog box is displayed.
- 2 Fill in the fields, then click *OK*.

2.2 Managing Administrator Rights

The following sections help you manage existing administrator accounts and their assigned rights:

- ♦ [Section 2.2.1, “Assigning Super Administrator Rights,” on page 22](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.2.2, “Assigning Additional Rights,” on page 22](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.2.3, “Modifying Assigned Rights,” on page 23](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.2.4, “Removing Assigned Rights,” on page 23](#)

2.2.1 Assigning Super Administrator Rights

A Super Administrator has all rights to perform all actions in ZENworks Control Center. For more information about all of the rights that a Super Administrator has, see [Section 2.3, “Rights Descriptions,” on page 23](#). If you grant an administrator Super Administrator rights, any assigned rights that have been allowed, denied, or not set are overridden.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 Click the administrator in the *Name* column of the Administrators panel.
- 3 Select the *Super Administrator* check box.
- 4 Click *OK*.

2.2.2 Assigning Additional Rights

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 Click the administrator in the *Name* column of the Administrators panel.
- 3 Click *Add*, then click an item from the drop-down list.
- 4 Fill in the fields.

For more information, see [Section 2.3, “Rights Descriptions,” on page 23](#).

- 5 Click *OK*.

You can also use the `admin-rights-set` command in `zman` to assign additional rights for an administrator account. For more information, see [“Administrator Commands” in the ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference](#).

2.2.3 Modifying Assigned Rights

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 Click the administrator in the *Name* column of the Administrators panel.
- 3 Select the check box next to the assigned right.
- 4 Click *Edit*, then modify the settings.
For more information, see [Section 2.3, “Rights Descriptions,” on page 23](#).
- 5 Click *OK*.

2.2.4 Removing Assigned Rights

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 Click the administrator in the *Name* column of the Administrators pane.
- 3 Select the check box next to the assigned right.
- 4 Click *Delete*.

You can also use the `admin-rights-delete` command in `zman` to delete assigned rights for an administrator account. For more information, see [“Administrator Commands” in the ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference](#).

2.3 Rights Descriptions

When you create additional administrator accounts you can provide full access to your zone or you can create accounts with limited rights. For example, you could create an administrator account that enables the administrator to assign bundles to devices but doesn’t allow the administrator to create bundles. Or, you could create an administrator account that allows access to all management tasks except those pertaining to Management Zone configuration (user sources, registration, configuration settings, and so forth). For information about creating additional administrators, see [“Creating Administrators” on page 20](#).

For **Administrator Roles** only, a third column of rights options is added to each rights assignment dialog box: *Unset*, which allows rights set elsewhere in ZENworks to be used for the role.

The most restrictive right set in ZENworks prevails. Therefore, if you select the *Deny* option, the right is denied for any administrator assigned to that role, even if the administrator is granted that right elsewhere in ZENworks.

If you select the *Allow* option and the right has not been denied elsewhere in ZENworks, the administrator has that right for the role.

If you select the *Unset* option, the administrator is not granted the right for the role unless it is granted elsewhere in ZENworks.

You can also add, modify, or remove the assigned rights for an existing administrator. For more information, see [Section 2.2.2, “Assigning Additional Rights,” on page 22](#), [Section 2.2.3, “Modifying Assigned Rights,” on page 23](#), or [Section 2.2.4, “Removing Assigned Rights,” on page 23](#).

The following sections contain additional information about the various rights that you can assign:

- ♦ [Section 2.3.1, “Administrator Rights,” on page 24](#)

- ♦ [Section 2.3.2, “Bundle Rights,” on page 24](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.3, “Contract Management Rights,” on page 25](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.4, “Device Rights,” on page 25](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.5, “Document Rights,” on page 26](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.6, “Inventoried Device Rights,” on page 27](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.7, “License Management Rights,” on page 27](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.8, “Policy Rights,” on page 28](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.9, “Quick Task Rights,” on page 29](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.10, “Remote Management Rights,” on page 29](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.11, “Reporting Rights,” on page 30](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.12, “User Rights,” on page 30](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.13, “ZENworks User Group Rights,” on page 31](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3.14, “Zone Rights,” on page 31](#)

2.3.1 Administrator Rights

The Administrator Rights dialog box lets you allow the selected administrator to grant rights to other administrators and to create or delete administrator accounts for your Management Zone.

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Grant Rights:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to grant rights to other administrators.
- ♦ **Create/Delete:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete administrator accounts.

2.3.2 Bundle Rights

The Bundle Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing bundles, then modify the rights associated with those folders.

- ♦ [“Bundles” on page 24](#)
- ♦ [“Bundle Rights” on page 24](#)

Bundles

To select the folder that contains the bundles for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Bundle Rights

The *Privileges* section lets you grant the selected administrator rights to create or modify bundles, create or modify groups, and create or modify folders.

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Modify:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify existing bundles.

- ♦ **Create/Delete:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete bundles.
- ♦ **Modify Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify existing groups.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete groups.
- ♦ **Modify Group Membership:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the list of bundles contained in bundle groups.
- ♦ **Modify Folder:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify folders.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Folders:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete folders.

2.3.3 Contract Management Rights

The Contract Management Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing contracts, then modify the rights associated with contracts and folders.

- ♦ [“Contract Management” on page 25](#)
- ♦ [“Privileges” on page 25](#)

Contract Management

To select the folder that contains the contracts for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Privileges

- ♦ **Modify:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the existing contracts.
- ♦ **Create/Delete:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete contracts.
- ♦ **Modify Folder:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify folders.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Folders:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete folders.

2.3.4 Device Rights

The Device Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing devices, then modify the rights associated with those folders.

- ♦ [“Devices” on page 25](#)
- ♦ [“Device Rights” on page 26](#)

Devices

To select the folder that contains the devices for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Device Rights

The *Privileges* section lets you grant the selected administrator rights to work with devices, including device groups and folders, allowing the administrator to assign policies and bundles to devices.

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Modify:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the existing device objects.
- ♦ **Create/Delete:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete device objects.
- ♦ **Modify Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify existing groups.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete groups.
- ♦ **Modify Group Membership:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the list of devices contained in device groups.
- ♦ **Modify Folder:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify folders.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Folders:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete folders.
- ♦ **Modify Settings:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify device settings.
- ♦ **Assign Policies:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to assign policies to devices.
- ♦ **Assign Bundles:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to assign bundles to devices.

2.3.5 Document Rights

The Document Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing documents, then modify the rights associated with documents and folders.

- ♦ “Documents” on page 26
- ♦ “Privileges” on page 26

Documents

To select the folder that contains the documents for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Privileges

- ♦ **Modify:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to reassign existing documents.
- ♦ **Create/Delete:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to import or delete documents.

- ♦ **Modify Folder:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify folders.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Folders:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete folders.

2.3.6 Inventoried Device Rights

The Inventoried Device Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing devices, then modify the rights associated with those folders.

- ♦ [“Devices” on page 27](#)
- ♦ [“Inventoried Device Rights” on page 27](#)

Devices

To select the folder that contains the inventoried devices for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Inventoried Device Rights

The *Privileges* section lets you grant the selected administrator rights to work with inventoried devices, including device groups and folders.

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Modify:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify existing inventoried device objects.
- ♦ **Create/Delete:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete inventoried device objects.
- ♦ **Modify Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify existing groups.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete groups.
- ♦ **Modify Group Membership:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the list of devices contained in device groups.
- ♦ **Modify Folder:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify folders.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Folders:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete folders.
- ♦ **Modify Settings:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify inventoried device settings.

2.3.7 License Management Rights

The License Management Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing licenses, then modify the rights associated with licenses and folders.

- ♦ [“License Management” on page 28](#)
- ♦ [“Privileges” on page 28](#)

License Management

To select the folder that contains the licenses for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Privileges

- ♦ **Modify:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the existing licenses.
- ♦ **Create/Delete:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete licenses.
- ♦ **Modify Folder:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify folders.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Folders:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete folders.

2.3.8 Policy Rights

The Policy Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing policies, then modify the rights associated with those folders.

- ♦ “Policies” on page 28
- ♦ “Policy Rights” on page 28

Policies

To select the folder that contains the policies for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Policy Rights

The *Privileges* section lets you grant the selected administrator rights to work with policies, including device groups and folders.

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Modify:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the existing policies.
- ♦ **Create/Delete:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete policies.
- ♦ **Modify Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify existing groups.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete groups.
- ♦ **Modify Group Membership:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the list of policies contained in policy groups.
- ♦ **Modify Folders:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify folders.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Folders:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete folders.

2.3.9 Quick Task Rights

The Quick Tasks Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing devices, then modify the Quick Task rights associated with those folders.

Quick Tasks are tasks that appear in ZENworks Control Center task lists (for example, Server Tasks, Workstation Tasks, Bundles Tasks, and so forth). When you click a task, either a wizard launches to step you through the task or a dialog box appears in which you enter information to complete the task.

You can use the Quick Tasks Rights dialog box to allow or deny the selected administrator the rights to perform certain tasks using Quick Tasks.

- ♦ [“Devices” on page 29](#)
- ♦ [“Quick Task Rights” on page 29](#)

Devices

To select the folder that contains the device for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Quick Task Rights

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Shutdown/Reboot/Wake Up Devices:** Specify whether the administrator can shut down, reboot, or wake up the devices in the folders you selected in the list.
- ♦ **Execute Processes:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to execute processes on the devices.
- ♦ **Refresh ZENworks Adaptive Agent:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to refresh the ZENworks Adaptive Agent on devices.
- ♦ **Install/Launch Bundles:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to install or launch bundles. The administrator must also have Assign Bundles rights for devices to install or launch bundles using Quick Task options.
- ♦ **Apply Image:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to apply an image to devices.
- ♦ **Take Image:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to take an image of a device.
- ♦ **Inventory:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to inventory devices.

2.3.10 Remote Management Rights

The Remote Management Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing devices and users, then modify the Remote Management rights associated with those folders. Granting Remote Execute rights allows the administrator to execute processes in the system space.

- ♦ [“Devices/Users” on page 30](#)
- ♦ [“Remote Management Rights” on page 30](#)

Devices/Users

To select the folder that contains the devices and users for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

Remote Management Rights

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Remote View:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to remotely view devices.
- ♦ **Remote Diagnostics:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to perform remote diagnostic procedures on devices.
- ♦ **Remote Execute:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to remotely execute processes on devices.
- ♦ **Transfer files:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to transfer files to or from devices.
- ♦ **Remote Control:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to remotely control devices.

2.3.11 Reporting Rights

The Reporting Rights dialog box lets you allow or deny the administrator the rights to create, delete, execute, or publish reports.

2.3.12 User Rights

The User Rights dialog box lets you select folders containing users, then modify the rights associated with those folders.

- ♦ “Users” on page 30
- ♦ “User Rights” on page 30

Users

To select the folder that contains the users for which you want to assign rights, click *Add* to display the Contexts dialog box, then browse for and select the folders for which you want to assign rights.

User Rights

The *Privileges* section lets you grant the selected administrator rights to work with devices, including device groups and folders, allowing the administrator to assign policies and bundles to devices.

The following rights are available:

Modify ZENworks Group Membership: Allow or deny the rights necessary to modify ZENworks group membership. If you select this option, you must also grant rights to *Modify ZENworks Group Membership* under *ZENworks User Group Rights*.

Assign Policies: Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to assign policies to users.

Assign Bundles: Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to assign bundles to users.

2.3.13 ZENworks User Group Rights

The ZENworks User Group Rights dialog box lets you allow or deny the administrator the rights to create, delete, or modify groups and to modify group membership.

The following rights are available:

- ♦ **Modify Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify existing groups.
- ♦ **Create/Delete Groups:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete groups.
- ♦ **Modify ZENworks Group Membership:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the ZENworks group membership. If you select this option, you must also grant rights to *Modify ZENworks Group Membership* under *User Rights*.
- ♦ **Assign Policies:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the list of policies contained in policy groups.
- ♦ **Assign Bundles:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify the list of bundles contained in policy groups.

2.3.14 Zone Rights

The Zone Rights dialog box lets you modify the administrator's rights to administer settings in your ZENworks Management Zone.

- ♦ **Modify User Sources:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify user sources.

A user source is an LDAP directory that contains the users to whom you want to distribute ZENworks content. When you define a user source, you also define the source containers from which you want to read users and user groups.

Modifying user sources includes adding, removing, or renaming user sources and assigning policies or bundles to user sources.

- ♦ **Create/Delete User Sources:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to create or delete user sources.
- ♦ **Modify Settings:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify your Management Zone settings.

The Management Zone settings let you manage the global configuration settings for your Management Zone. These global configuration settings are inherited by other objects (devices, users, and folders) within your Management Zone and remain in effect unless they are overridden on those objects.

- ♦ **Modify Zone Infrastructure:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to modify Zone infrastructure.
 - ♦ Delete ZENworks Server
 - ♦ Refresh Device
- ♦ **Configure Registration:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to configure device registration.

Registration lets you manage the various configuration settings for registering devices as managed devices in the Management Zone. It also lets you create registration keys or registration rules to help you register devices. A registration key lets you apply group and folder assignments to devices as they register. A registration rule lets you apply group and folder assignments to folders if the device meets the rule criteria.

- ♦ **Discovery:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to manage discovery tasks.
- ♦ **Approve Updates:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to approve updates.
- ♦ **Apply Updates:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to apply updates.
- ♦ **Deployment:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to perform deployment operations.

Deployment lets you discover network devices and deploy the ZENworks Adaptive Agent to them so that they become managed devices in your Management Zone.

- ♦ **Delete News Alerts:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to delete the news alerts.
- ♦ **Update News Alerts:** Allow or deny the administrator the rights necessary to update the news alerts.

2.4 Managing Administrator Roles

Perform the following tasks to manage administrator roles in ZENworks 10 Configuration Management:

- ♦ [Section 2.4.1, “Understanding Administrator Roles,” on page 32](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4.2, “Creating a Role,” on page 35](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4.3, “Assigning Roles,” on page 37](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4.4, “Editing a Role,” on page 41](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4.5, “Renaming a Role,” on page 44](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4.6, “Deleting a Role,” on page 44](#)

2.4.1 Understanding Administrator Roles

The roles feature allows you to specify rights that can be assigned as roles for ZENworks administrators. You can create a specialized role, then assign administrators to that role to allow or deny them the ZENworks Control Center rights that you specify for that role. For example, you could create a Help Desk role with the ZENworks Control Center rights that you want help desk operators to have.

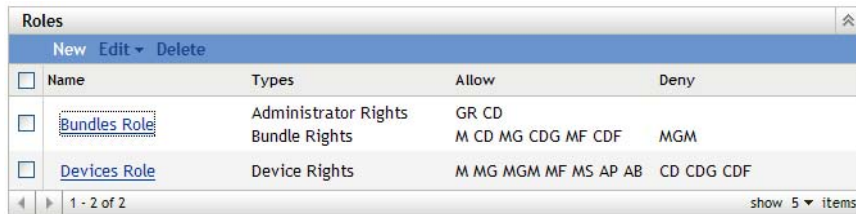
The following sections explain the different locations in ZENworks Control Center where you can manage roles:

- ♦ [“The Roles Panel” on page 33](#)
- ♦ [“The Roles Settings Page” on page 34](#)
- ♦ [“The Administrator Settings Page” on page 35](#)

The Roles Panel

The Roles panel displays the following information:

Figure 2-1 Roles Panel



Roles			
New Edit ▾ Delete			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Types	Allow Deny
<input type="checkbox"/>	Bundles Role	Administrator Rights Bundle Rights	GR CD M CD MG CDG MF CDF MGM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Devices Role	Device Rights	M MG MGM MF MS AP AB CD CDG CDF
1 - 2 of 2			show 5 ▾ items

- ♦ **Name:** You specified this when you created the role. You can rename the role here. You can also click a role name to edit its rights configuration.
- ♦ **Types:** Lists each ZENworks Control Center rights type that is configured for the role.
- ♦ **Allow:** For each type listed, abbreviations are displayed to indicate the rights that are allowed for that role.
- ♦ **Deny:** For each type listed, abbreviations are displayed to indicate the rights that are denied for that role.

If a right is configured as *Unset*, its abbreviation is not listed in either the *Allow* or *Deny* column.

In the Roles panel, you can **add**, **assign**, **edit**, **rename**, and **delete** a role.

The Roles Settings Page

If you click a role in the *Name* column on the Roles panel, the Role Settings page is displayed with the following information:

Figure 2-2 Role Settings Page

[Configuration](#) > Bundles Role

General

Object type:

Role

GUID:

f4ccf0bcf5b8ab9007540f078572101e

Description:

Role to restrict rights to Bundles.

Rights

Add Edit Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	Type	Allow	Deny
<input type="checkbox"/>	Administrator Rights	GR CD	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Bundle Rights	M CD MG CDG MF CDF	MGM

1 - 2 of 2

show 5 items

Assigned Administrators

Add Edit Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	Administrator	Type	Context
<input type="checkbox"/>	Admin1	Administrator Rights	Zone
		Bundle Rights	/Bundles

1 - 1 of 1

show 5 items

Apply

Reset

- ♦ **General panel:** Displays the ZENworks Control Center object type (Role), its GUID, and a description that you can edit here.
- ♦ **Rights panel:** Displays the ZENworks Control Center rights configured for the role. You can add, edit, and delete the rights in this panel.
- ♦ **Assigned Administrators panel:** Lists the administrators assigned to this role. You can add, edit, or delete the administrators in this panel.

The Administrator Settings Page

If you click an administrator in the *Administrator* column on the Roles Settings page, the Administrator Settings page is displayed with the following information:

Figure 2-3 Administrator Settings Page

[Configuration](#) > Admin1

General

Administrator Full Name:

☐ Super Administrator

Note: If the Super Administrator check box is checked, then this Administrator is a Super Administrator with all rights. This will override any assigned rights that may be allowed, denied, or not set.

Assigned Rights

Add Edit Delete

<input type="checkbox"/> Type	Context	Rights
No items available.		

Note: Every admin receives view rights and they are not removable.

Assigned Roles

Add Edit Delete

<input type="checkbox"/> Role	Type	Context
<input type="checkbox"/> Bundles Role	Administrator Rights Bundle Rights	Zone /Bundles

1 - 1 of 1

show 5 items

Apply

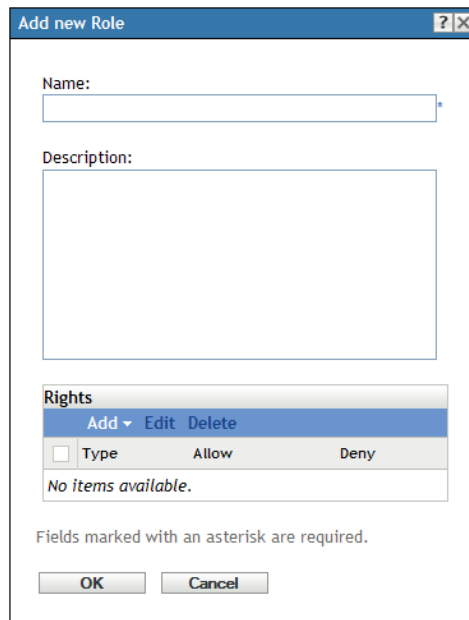
Reset

- ♦ **General panel:** Displays the administrator's full name and provides the option to specify the administrator as a Super Administrator, which grants all ZENworks Control Center rights to that administrator, regardless of what is configured for the role.
- ♦ **Rights panel:** Lists the rights that are assigned to the administrator, independent of rights granted or denied by any roles assigned to the administrator. The rights listed in this panel override any rights assigned by a role. You can add, edit, and delete rights in this panel.
- ♦ **Assigned Roles panel:** Lists the roles assigned to this administrator. You can add, edit, and delete roles in this panel.

2.4.2 Creating a Role

A role can include one or more rights types. You can configure as many roles as you need. To configure the role's function:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, click the *Configuration* tab, then in the Roles panel, click *New* to open the Add New Role dialog box:



Add new Role

Name:

Description:

Rights

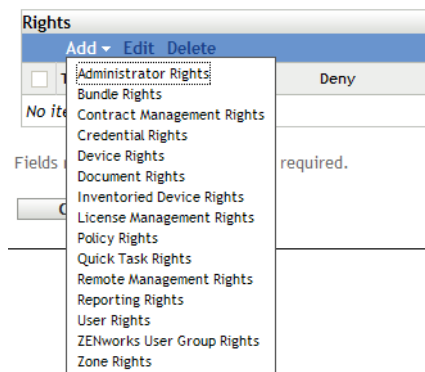
Add Edit Delete

Type	Allow	Deny
No items available.		

Fields marked with an asterisk are required.

OK Cancel

- 2 Specify a name and description for the role.
- 3 To configure the rights for the role, click *Add* and select a rights type from the drop-down list:



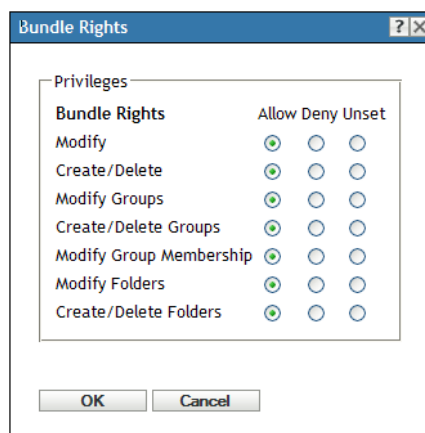
Rights

Add Edit Delete

Type	Allow	Deny
Administrator Rights		Deny
Bundle Rights		
Contract Management Rights		
Credential Rights		
Device Rights		
Document Rights		
Inventoried Device Rights		
License Management Rights		
Policy Rights		
Quick Task Rights		
Remote Management Rights		
Reporting Rights		
User Rights		
ZENworks User Group Rights		
Zone Rights		

Fields marked with an asterisk are required.

- 4 In the following dialog box, select whether each privilege should be allowed, denied, or left unset.



Bundle Rights

Privileges

Bundle Rights	Allow	Deny	Unset
Modify	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Create/Delete	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Modify Groups	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Create/Delete Groups	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Modify Group Membership	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Modify Folders	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Create/Delete Folders	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

OK Cancel

Unset allows rights set elsewhere in ZENworks to be used for the role.

The most restrictive right set in ZENworks prevails. If you select the *Deny* option, the right is denied for any administrator assigned to that role, even if the administrator is granted that right elsewhere in ZENworks.

If you select the *Allow* option and the right has not been denied elsewhere in ZENworks, the administrator has that right for the role.

If you select the *Unset* option, the administrator is not granted the right for the role unless it is granted elsewhere in ZENworks.

5 Click *OK* to continue.

6 To add another rights type to the role, repeat **Step 3** through **Step 5**.

7 Click *OK* to exit the Add New Role dialog box.

The role is now displayed in the Roles panel. To assign it to administrators, see **Section 2.4.3, “Assigning Roles,”** on page 37.

2.4.3 Assigning Roles

You can assign roles to administrators, or administrators to roles:

- ♦ “Assigning Roles to Administrators” on page 37
- ♦ “Assigning Administrators to Roles” on page 39

Assigning Roles to Administrators

Rights can be set in multiple locations in ZENworks Control Center, including for administrators. Administrators can be assigned to multiple roles.

If an administrator has rights conflicts because different conditions are set for a particular right in ZENworks Control Center, the *Deny* option is used if it is set anywhere for the administrator. In other words, *Deny* always supersedes *Allow* when there are rights conflicts.

To assign roles to an administrator:

- 1** In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, click the *Configuration* tab, then in the Administrators panel, click an administrator name in the *Name* column to open the administrator’s settings page:

[Configuration](#) > Admin1

General

Administrator Full Name:

☐ Super Administrator

Note: If the Super Administrator check box is checked, then this Administrator is a Super Administrator with all rights. This will override any assigned rights that may be allowed, denied, or not set.

Assigned Rights

[Add](#) [Edit](#) [Delete](#)

☐ Type Context Rights

No items available.

Note: Every admin receives view rights and they are not removable.

Assigned Roles

[Add](#) [Edit](#) [Delete](#)

☐ Role Type Context

☐ [Bundles Role](#) Administrator Rights Zone
Bundle Rights /Bundles

1 - 1 of 1 show 5 items

- In the Assigned Roles panel, click *Add*, browse for and select the roles for the administrator, then click *OK*.

Select Role

Select a role

Look in:

Name filter: Items of type:

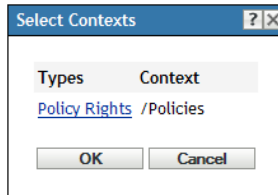
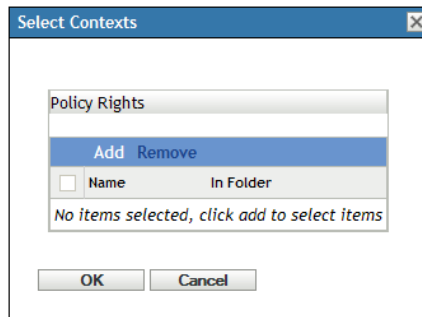
Name	Type
Bundles Role	Role
Devices Role	Role

1 - 2 of 2 show 25 items

- (Conditional) If the Select Contexts dialog box is displayed, you can set the ZENworks Control Center contexts that are undefined. Click a role type, click *Add*, browse for and select a context, click *OK* to add the context, then click *OK* again to assign the role.

Select Contexts

Types	Context
Policy Rights	



A context allows you to limit where granted rights can be used. Contexts are not required. However, if you do not specify a context, the right is not granted because it has no context for where it can be applied.

Rights that are global in nature automatically display `Zone` as the context.

- 4 To add another administrator, repeat **Step 2** and **Step 3**.
- 5 Click *Apply* to save the changes.

Assigning Administrators to Roles

Rights can be set in multiple locations in ZENworks Control Center, including for roles. Administrators can be assigned to multiple roles.

If an administrator has rights conflicts because different conditions are set for a particular right in ZENworks Control Center, the *Deny* option is used if it is set anywhere for the administrator. In other words, *Deny* always supersedes *Allow* when there are rights conflicts.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, click the *Configuration* tab, then in the Roles panel, click a role name in the *Name* column to open the role's settings page:

[Configuration](#) > Bundles Role

General

Object type:

Role

GUID:

f4ccf0bcf5b8ab9007540f078572101e

Description:

Role to restrict rights to Bundles.

Rights

Add

Edit

Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	Type	Allow	Deny
<input type="checkbox"/>	Administrator Rights	GR CD	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Bundle Rights	M CD MG CDG MF CDF	MGM

1 - 2 of 2

show 5 items

Assigned Administrators

Add

Edit

Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	Administrator	Type	Context
<input type="checkbox"/>	Admin1	Administrator Rights	Zone
		Bundle Rights	/Bundles

1 - 1 of 1

show 5 items

Apply

Reset

- In the Assigned Administrators panel, click *Add*, browse for and select the administrators for the role, then click *OK*.

Select Administrator

Select an administrator

Look in:

/Administrators

Name filter:

Items of type:

All Types

Name	Type
Admin1	Administrator
Admin2	Administrator

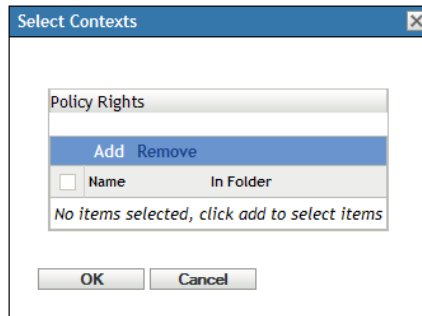
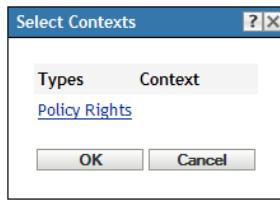
1 - 2 of 2

show 25 items

OK

Cancel

- (Conditional) If the Select Contexts dialog box is displayed, you can set the ZENworks Control Center contexts that are undefined. Click a role type, click *Add*, browse for and select a context, click *OK* to add the context, then click *OK* again to assign the role.



A context allows you to limit where granted rights can be used. Contexts are not required. However, if you do not specify a context, the right is not granted because it has no context for where it can be applied.

Rights that are global in nature automatically display `Zone` as the context.

4 To add another role, repeat **Step 2** and **Step 3**.

5 Click *Apply* to save the changes.

2.4.4 Editing a Role

You can edit a role's configuration at any time. After you apply the edited role, its changes are then effective for any assigned administrator.

1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, click the *Configuration* tab, then in the Roles panel, click *Edit* to open the Edit Role dialog box:

Name: Bundles Role

Description:
Role to restrict rights to Bundles.

Rights

Type	Allow	Deny
<input type="checkbox"/> Administrator Rights	GR CD	
<input type="checkbox"/> Bundle Rights	M CD MG CDG MF CDF MGM	

Fields marked with an asterisk are required.

OK Cancel

- 2 To edit the description, make the changes directly in the *Description* field.
- 3 To edit existing rights, do the following:
 - 3a In the Rights panel, select the check box for a rights type, then click *Edit* to open the following dialog box:

Bundle Rights

Privileges

Bundle Rights	Allow	Deny	Unset
Modify	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Create/Delete	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Modify Groups	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Create/Delete Groups	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Modify Group Membership	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Modify Folders	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Create/Delete Folders	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

OK Cancel

- 3b For each privilege, select whether it should be allowed, denied, or left unset.

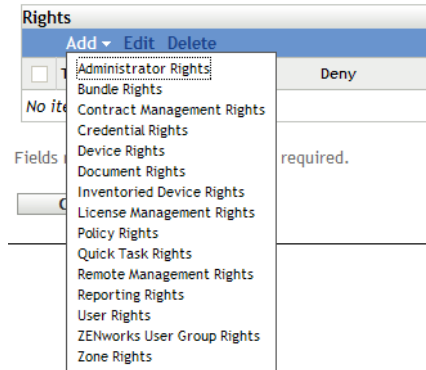
Unset allows rights set elsewhere in ZENworks to be used for the role.

The most restrictive right set in ZENworks prevails. If you select the *Deny* option, the right is denied for any administrator assigned to that role, even if the administrator is granted that right elsewhere in ZENworks.

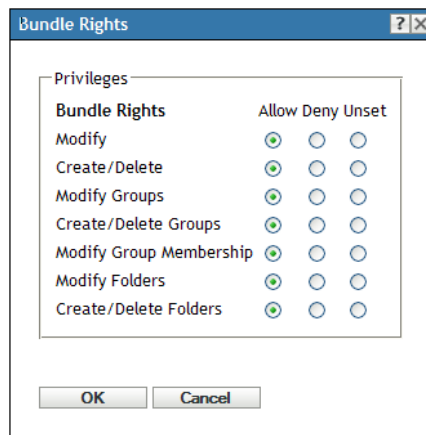
If you select the *Allow* option and the right has not been denied elsewhere in ZENworks, the administrator has that right for the role.

If you select the *Unset* option, the administrator is not granted the right for the role unless it is granted elsewhere in ZENworks.

- 3c** Click *OK* to continue.
- 3d** To edit another existing role, repeat **Step 3a** through **Step 3c**.
- 4** To add new rights, do the following:
- 4a** In the Rights panel, click *Add*, then select one of the rights types from the drop-down list:



- 4b** In the Rights dialog box, select whether each privilege should be allowed, denied, or left unset.



Unset allows rights set elsewhere in ZENworks to to be used for the role.

The most restrictive right set in ZENworks prevails. If you select the *Deny* option, the right is denied for any administrator assigned to that role, even if the administrator is granted that right elsewhere in ZENworks.

If you select the *Allow* option and the right has not been denied elsewhere in ZENworks, the administrator has that right for the role.

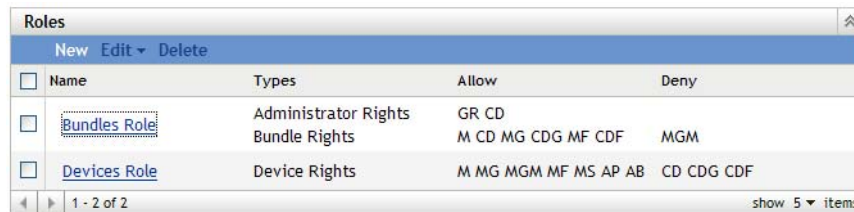
If you select the *Unset* option, the administrator is not granted the right for the role unless it is granted elsewhere in ZENworks.

- 4c** Click *OK* to continue.
- 4d** To add another rights type to the role, repeat **Step 4a** through **Step 4c**.
- 5** To exit the dialog box and save your changes to the role, click *OK*.

2.4.5 Renaming a Role

Role names can be changed at any time. The changed role name is automatically replicated wherever it is displayed in ZENworks Control Center.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, click the *Configuration* tab, then in the Roles panel, select the check box for the role to be renamed.



<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Types	Allow	Deny
<input type="checkbox"/>	Bundles Role	Administrator Rights Bundle Rights	GR CD M CD MG CDG MF CDF	MGM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Devices Role	Device Rights	M MG MGM MF MS AP AB	CD CDG CDF

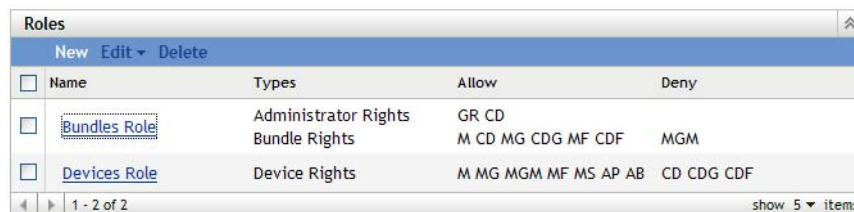
- 2 Click *Edit > Rename* to open the Rename Role dialog box:
- 3 Specify the new role name, then click *OK*.

2.4.6 Deleting a Role

When you delete a role, its rights configurations are no longer applicable to any administrator that was assigned to the role.

Deleted roles cannot be recovered. You must re-create them.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, click the *Configuration* tab, then in the Roles panel, select the check box for the role to be deleted.



<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Types	Allow	Deny
<input type="checkbox"/>	Bundles Role	Administrator Rights Bundle Rights	GR CD M CD MG CDG MF CDF	MGM
<input type="checkbox"/>	Devices Role	Device Rights	M MG MGM MF MS AP AB	CD CDG CDF

- 2 Click *Delete*, then confirm that you want to delete the role.

The ZENworks[®] Server is the backbone of the ZENworks system. It communicates with the ZENworks Adaptive Agent on managed devices to deliver software, apply policies, collect inventory, and perform other management tasks. It stores content to be delivered to devices and images to be used for imaging devices. It communicates with other ZENworks Servers to replicate or receive content throughout the servers, distribution points, and collection roll-up points in the system.

The following sections provide additional information about the ZENworks Server:

- [Section 3.1, “ZENworks Services on a Windows Server,” on page 45](#)
- [Section 3.2, “ZENworks Services on a Linux Server,” on page 47](#)
- [Section 3.3, “Configuring Additional Access to a ZENworks Server,” on page 48](#)
- [Section 3.4, “Uninstalling a ZENworks Server,” on page 50](#)

3.1 ZENworks Services on a Windows Server

When running on a Windows* server, a ZENworks Server includes the following services:

Table 3-1 *ZENworks Services on Windows*

Service	Service Name	Description
Proxy DHCP Service	novell-proxydhcp	Used with a standard DHCP server to inform PXE-enabled devices of the IP address of the Novell [®] TFTP server.
TFTP Service	novell-tftp	Used by PXE-enabled devices to request files that are needed to perform imaging tasks.
ZENworks Agent Service	zenworkswindowsservice novell-zmd	Used to enable the server as a managed device.
ZENworks Datastore	dbsrv10	Embedded database used for storing ZENworks objects and resources.
ZENworks Loader	zenloader	Used for loading and controlling the Java* services that perform ZENworks Server tasks.
ZENworks Preboot Policy Service	novell-zmgprebootpolicy	Used by PXE-enabled devices to check for assigned preboot policies and work.
ZENworks Preboot Service	novell-pbserv	Used to provide imaging services to a device. This includes sending and receiving image files, discovering assigned Preboot bundles, acting as session master for multicast imaging, and so forth.

Service	Service Name	Description
ZENworks Remote Management	nzrwinvnc	Used to enable remote management of the server.
ZENworks Server	zenserver	Used for communicating with the ZENworks Agent.
ZENworks Services Monitor	zenwatch	Used to monitor the status of the ZENworks services.
ZENworks Imaging Agent	ziswin	Used to save and restore image-safe data on the server (as a managed device). Only runs when launched by the ZENworks Agent.

The services reside in the `\novell\zenworks\bin` directory on a ZENworks Server. Refer to the following sections for instructions to help you control the ZENworks services:

- ♦ [Section 3.1.1, “Checking the Status of a ZENworks Service,” on page 46](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.1.2, “Starting a ZENworks Service,” on page 46](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.1.3, “Stopping a ZENworks Service,” on page 46](#)

3.1.1 Checking the Status of a ZENworks Service

- 1 On the server, click *Start*, select *Administrative Tools > Services*, then review the status of the services listed in [Table 3-1 on page 45](#).

3.1.2 Starting a ZENworks Service

- 1 On the server, click *Start*, select *Administrative Tools > Services*.
- 2 Select the service you want to start (see [Table 3-1 on page 45](#)), then click *Start the service*.

The ZENworks services start when the ZENworks Server is booted and should not normally need to be restarted. If you need to frequently restart the services, ensure that your server hardware meets the minimum requirements for ZENworks Configuration Management. If the server does not have adequate RAM, ZENworks services might not stay running. For more information, see “[Primary Server Requirements](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.

3.1.3 Stopping a ZENworks Service

- 1 On the server, click *Start*, select *Administrative Tools > Services*.
- 2 Select the service you want to stop (see [Table 3-1 on page 45](#)), then click *Stop the service*.

3.2 ZENworks Services on a Linux Server

The ZENworks Server includes the following services on Linux:

Table 3-2 *ZENworks Services on Linux*

Service	Service Name	Description
Proxy DHCP Service	novell-proxydhcp	Used with a standard DHCP server to inform PXE-enabled devices of the IP address of the Novell TFTP server.
TFTP Service	novell-tftp	Used by PXE-enabled devices to request files that are needed to perform imaging tasks.
ZENworks Agent Service	novell-zmd	Used to enable the server as a managed device.
ZENworks Datastore	sybase-asa	Used to run the embedded SQL Anywhere* database.
ZENworks Loader	novell-zenloader	Used for loading and controlling the Java services that perform ZENworks Server tasks.
ZENworks Preboot Policy Service	novell-zmgprebootpolicy	Used by PXE-enabled devices to check for assigned preboot policies and work.
ZENworks Preboot Service	novell-pbserv	Used to provide imaging services to a device. This includes sending and receiving image files, discovering assigned Preboot bundles, acting as session master for multicast imaging, and so forth.
ZENworks Server	novell-zenserver	Used for communicating with the ZENworks Agent.
ZENworks Services Monitor	novell-zenmnr	Used to monitor the status of the ZENworks services.
ZENworks Imaging Agent	novell-zenagent	Used to save and restore image-safe data on the server (as a managed device). Only runs when launched by the ZENworks Agent.

The services reside in the `/etc/init.d` directory. Refer to the following sections for instructions to help you control the ZENworks services:

- ♦ [Section 3.2.1, “Checking the Status of a ZENworks Service,” on page 48](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.2.2, “Starting a ZENworks Service,” on page 48](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.2.3, “Stopping a ZENworks Service,” on page 48](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.2.4, “Restarting a ZENworks Service,” on page 48](#)

3.2.1 Checking the Status of a ZENworks Service

- 1 At the server command prompt, enter the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/servicename status
```

Replace *servicename* with the name of the service as listed in [Table 3-2 on page 47](#).

3.2.2 Starting a ZENworks Service

- 1 At the server command prompt, enter the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/servicename start
```

Replace *servicename* with the name of the service as listed in [Table 3-2 on page 47](#).

- 2 To start all services, use the following command:

```
/opt/novell/zenworks/bin/novell-zenworks-configure Start
```

The ZENworks services start when the ZENworks Server is booted and should not normally need to be restarted. If you need to frequently restart the services, ensure that your server hardware meets the minimum requirements for ZENworks Configuration Management. If the server does not have adequate RAM, ZENworks services might not stay running. For more information, see “[Primary Server Requirements](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.

3.2.3 Stopping a ZENworks Service

To stop a service, use the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/servicename stop
```

Replace *servicename* with the name of the service as listed in [Table 3-2 on page 47](#).

3.2.4 Restarting a ZENworks Service

To restart a service that is already running, use the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/servicename restart
```

Replace *servicename* with the name of the service as listed in [Table 3-2 on page 47](#).

3.3 Configuring Additional Access to a ZENworks Server

If you have managed devices that are unable to authenticate to the IP address or DNS name of a ZENworks Server, such as devices outside the firewall or devices using a proxy server, you can specify additional IP addresses or DNS names for the ZENworks Server that can be used by the devices for access to the server.

- ♦ [Section 3.3.1, “Addressing Non-Detectable IP Address Conditions,” on page 49](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.3.2, “Addressing Non-Detectable DNS Name Conditions,” on page 49](#)

3.3.1 Addressing Non-Detectable IP Address Conditions

The Non-Detectable IP Addresses panel lets you specify the addresses that can be used to access the ZENworks Server when the server's IP address cannot be found by a device.

For example, assume that you've configured a proxy server to handle traffic for the ZENworks Server and the devices that need to access the ZENworks Server cannot detect the ZENworks Server's IP address. To ensure that the devices can access the ZENworks Server through the proxy server, you enter the IP address of the proxy server.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Devices* in the left pane, select *Servers* in the Devices panel, select a server object, click the *Settings* tab, click *Infrastructure Management*, then select *Non-detectable IP Addresses*.
- 2 Fill in the field:
IP Address: Standard dotted-decimal notation. For example, 123.45.167.100.
- 3 Click *Add* to add the address to the list.
- 4 Repeat **Step 1** to **Step 3** to add additional IP addresses.
- 5 If necessary, use the *Move Up* and *Move Down* buttons to reorder the list.
The IP addresses are used in the order listed, from top to bottom.
- 6 When you are finished adding addresses, click *Apply* or *OK* to save the addresses.

3.3.2 Addressing Non-Detectable DNS Name Conditions

The Additional DNS Names panel lets you specify additional names that can be used to access the ZENworks Server when the server's DNS name cannot be found by a device.

For example, assume that you've configured a proxy server to handle traffic for the ZENworks Server and the devices cannot detect the ZENworks Server by its DNS name. To ensure that the devices can access the ZENworks Server through the proxy server, you provide the DNS name of the proxy server.

The DNS names added in this panel are distributed to all managed devices for them to use in connecting to the server.

To add a DNS name:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Devices* in the left pane, select *Servers* in the Devices panel, select a server object, click the *Settings* tab, click *Infrastructure Management*, then select *Additional DNS Names*.
- 2 In the *List of Server DNS Names* field, specify the DNS name for the IP address of the server (such as a proxy server) that the devices can access.
- 3 Click *Add* to add the DNS name to the list.

IMPORTANT: Do not add the main DNS name of ZENworks Server, or the DNS name of any of the devices that need to access the ZENworks Server. Only add DNS names of the intermediary devices that are used by managed devices to connect to the ZENworks Server.

- 4 If necessary, use the *Move Up* and *Move Down* buttons to reorder the list.
The DNS names are used in the order listed, from top to bottom.
- 5 When you are finished adding addresses, click *Apply* or *OK* to save the addresses.

3.4 Uninstalling a ZENworks Server

Instructions for uninstalling a ZENworks Server are provided in “[Uninstalling ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP2](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.

A Satellite is a managed device that can perform certain roles that a ZENworks® Primary Server normally performs. A Satellite can be any managed Windows device (server or workstation), but not a Primary Server.

When you configure a Satellite, you specify which roles it performs (Imaging, Collection, or Content). A Satellite can also perform roles that might be added by third-party products that are snap-ins to the ZENworks 10 Configuration Management framework.

You might, for example, create a Satellite in a location across a slow WAN link and create Closest Server rules to offload one or more roles from the Primary Server to the newly created Satellite to improve the performance of your ZENworks system.

NOTE: For information about Satellites from the perspective of an end-user using the ZENworks Adaptive Agent, see “[Satellite Roles](#)” in the *Novell ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Adaptive Agent Guide*.

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [Section 4.1, “Understanding the Satellite Roles,”](#) on page 51
- ♦ [Section 4.2, “Adding Satellites into the Server Hierarchy,”](#) on page 53
- ♦ [Section 4.3, “Removing Satellites from the Server Hierarchy,”](#) on page 55
- ♦ [Section 4.4, “Configuring Satellites from the Server Hierarchy,”](#) on page 56
- ♦ [Section 4.5, “Configuring Satellites from the Device View,”](#) on page 58
- ♦ [Section 4.6, “Specifying Content to Be Hosted,”](#) on page 61
- ♦ [Section 4.7, “Specifying a Different Repository for the Content Role Satellite \(Windows Only\),”](#) on page 61
- ♦ [Section 4.8, “Troubleshooting Satellites,”](#) on page 62

4.1 Understanding the Satellite Roles

The following sections explain the Satellite roles:

- ♦ [Section 4.1.1, “Understanding the Imaging Role,”](#) on page 51
- ♦ [Section 4.1.2, “Understanding the Collection Role,”](#) on page 52
- ♦ [Section 4.1.3, “Understanding the Content Role,”](#) on page 52

4.1.1 Understanding the Imaging Role

The Imaging role installs the Imaging services and adds the Imaging role to the device. With this role, the device can be used as an Imaging server to perform all the Imaging operations, such as taking an image and applying an image within as well as across subnets by using unicast or multicast imaging.

The Imaging role can be used to achieve load balance for the Primary Server, and also to support cross-subnet imaging. The Satellite communicates with the Primary Server for the Imaging operations in the Auto mode through ZENworks Control Center.

On the managed device, the Imaging module is inactive until you promote the managed device to be a Satellite with the Imaging role or the Imaging role is added to an existing Satellite. This activates the Imaging services on the device, and enables you to perform the Imaging operations in auto and maintenance mode. The Imaging services installed on the device include TFTP, Preboot policy, pbserv, and proxy DHCP. All services, except for proxy DHCP, are automatically started. You can manually start or stop the proxy DHCP service from ZENworks Control Center.

4.1.2 Understanding the Collection Role

If you want to improve information roll-up access for a group of devices to minimize traffic to the ZENworks Primary Server that is hosting the ZENworks database, you can enable the Collection role on a device. For example, if you have devices that are rolling up information to a Primary Server outside of their network segment, you can minimize network traffic by enabling the Collection role on a device within the network segment to accept the information from the other devices in that segment. That Collection role device is then the only device from that segment that is rolling up information to the Primary Server.

You can enable the Collection role on any managed device. The Collection role requires only the Collection role module that is installed with the ZENworks Adaptive Agent. The module is inactive until you enable the Collection role on the managed device.

When you enable a Collection role on a device, you can assign any ZENworks Primary Server as its parent server. The Collection role device uploads information to its parent Primary Server only. If the parent Primary Server is not a child of another Primary Server, it then writes the information directly to the database. If the parent Primary Server is a child of another Primary Server, it passes the information up to its parent Primary Server, which writes the information to the database.

The information that is rolled up includes device inventory information, messages (errors, warning, informational, and so forth), and policy and bundle statuses. There is a roll-up schedule that you can edit.

4.1.3 Understanding the Content Role

If you want to improve content access for a group of devices without creating another Primary Server, you can create the Content role on a device. For example, if you have devices that are accessing a Primary Server outside of their network segment, you can create the Content role on a device within the network segment to service those devices.

The Content role provides the same content delivery service as a Primary Server but requires only the Content role module that is installed with the ZENworks Adaptive Agent. The module is inactive until you enable it on the managed device.

When you enable the Content role on a device, you assign a Primary Server as its parent content server. The Content role Satellite downloads content from its parent Primary Server only. Therefore, any content you want hosted on a Content role device must also be hosted on its parent Primary Server.

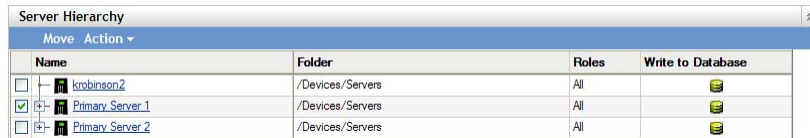
4.2 Adding Satellites into the Server Hierarchy

This option allows you to add devices into the Server Hierarchy listing and configure them with Satellite roles.

1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.

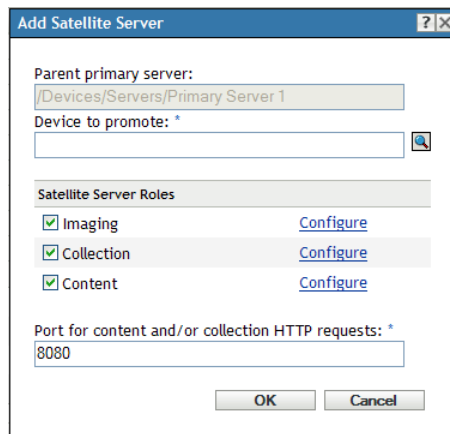
2 In the Server Hierarchy panel, select the check box next to the desired Primary Server.

You can add a Satellite under any Primary Server displayed in the listing, at any nested depth. You cannot add a Satellite to be a child of another Satellite. Only a Primary Server can be a parent of a Satellite.



	Name	Folder	Roles	Write to Database
<input type="checkbox"/>	krobinson2	/Devices/Servers	All	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Primary Server 1	/Devices/Servers	All	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Primary Server 2	/Devices/Servers	All	

3 Click *Action > Add Satellite Server*.



Parent primary server:
/Devices/Servers/Primary Server 1

Device to promote: *

Satellite Server Roles

- ☒ Imaging [Configure](#)
- ☒ Collection [Configure](#)
- ☒ Content [Configure](#)

Port for content and/or collection HTTP requests: *
8080

OK Cancel

4 In the *Device to Promote* field, browse for and select a device (server or workstation) to be made a Satellite.

5 In the *Satellite Server Roles* section, configure the desired roles.

If the *Configure* link is disabled for any role, that role is disabled for this device. For example, if the Satellite's parent Primary Server does not have the Imaging role, the Satellite's Imaging role is disabled and cannot be configured. Non-configurable roles that a managed device performs are also listed in the dialog box but cannot be edited.

5a (Optional) Select the check box next to *Imaging*, then click *Configure*.

Selecting this option installs the Imaging services and adds the Imaging role to the device. With this role, the device can be used as an Imaging server to perform all the Imaging operations, such as taking an image, applying an image, and multicasting an image.

Fill in the fields:

Enable PXE Services: This option automatically starts the Proxy DHCP service on the device to which the Imaging Server role has been assigned.

To check whether the Proxy DHCP service has been started on the device, review the message log of the device (*Devices* tab > *Workstations* folder > click the workstation > *Summary* > Message Log panel).

Delete Image Files from the Server if Imaging Role is Removed: This option deletes the ZENworks image files stored on the device if its Imaging role is removed.

The messages are logged in the Message Log panel if the severity level of the local file and the system log is set to *Information and Above* on the Local Device Logging page. (*Configuration* tab > *Device Management* > *Local Device Logging*).

This option is available only when you want to remove the Imaging Server role from the device.

5b (Optional) Select the check box next to *Collection*, then click *Configure*.

This role causes the device to collect inventory information, messages (errors, warning, informational, and so forth), and policy and bundle statuses, then rolls that information up to its parent Primary Server, which in turn either writes to the database directly or passes the information to its parent Primary Server, which does the database writing.

The Collection Roll-Up schedule determines how often the collected inventory information is rolled up to the parent Primary Server for inclusion in the ZENworks database. When the information is in the database, it is viewable in ZENworks Control Center.

To specify the devices that use the Collection Roll-Up role, configure the *Closest Server Rules* setting in the *Management Zone* settings on the *Configuration* page.

Fill in the field:

Collection Roll-Up Schedule: Specify the number of days, hours, and minutes for how often you want the collected inventory data to be rolled up from the devices that use it as a collection server.

5c (Optional) Select the check box next to *Content*, then click *Configure*.

This managed device can distribute content (bundles and policies) to other devices. When you set up a device to function with a Content role, you must specify a Primary Server as its parent. The device with the Content role receives all content from its parent Primary Server.

Any content (bundles and policies) you want hosted on a Satellite with the Content role must also be hosted on its parent Primary Server. If the content is not hosted on the new Primary Server, it is added.

The Content Replication schedule determines how often content is sent down from the parent Primary Server to its child Satellite.

After you enable the Content role, the Satellite receives content that it can send to other devices in its network segment.

To specify the devices that need content from this Satellite, configure the *Closest Server Rules* setting in the *Management Zone* settings on the *Configuration* page.

Fill in the field:


Content Replication Schedule: Specify the number of days, hours, and minutes for how often you want the Satellite's content to be updated from the parent Primary Server.

6 (Optional) In the *Port for Content and/or Collection HTTP Requests* field, specify the port number.

The default port is 80. Content and Collection servers share the same Web server and the same port. Make sure that the specified port is not in use.

7 Click *OK*.

8 (Conditional) If you configure the Imaging role, the role is immediately added to the device. If the role is not immediately added, it is added only during the next device refresh schedule. However, if you want to immediately apply the role to the device, you must manually refresh the device in one of the following ways:

- ♦ In the *Configuration* tab > the *Server Hierarchy*, select the check box next to the devices you want to refresh, click *Action > Refresh Device*.
- ♦ On the managed device, right-click the  icon, then click *Refresh*.

4.3 Removing Satellites from the Server Hierarchy

The purpose of this option is to remove a Satellite from the Server Hierarchy listing when that device is no longer needed to perform Satellite functionality. The device's object isn't removed from ZENworks; it is just removed from the Server Hierarchy listing. However, removing a Satellite from the hierarchy listing does cause the content, imaging, or collection roll-up information to be removed from the device.

When you remove a Satellite, the managed devices that used it must be reconfigured to use another server for content and collection purposes. For more information, see [Section 9.1, "Setting Up Closest Server Rules," on page 91](#).

You cannot use this option to remove a Primary Server from the listing.

To remove a Satellite:


- 1 For the Satellite that you want to remove, make a note of all devices that are using it for their content and collection information roll-up.
- 2 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 3 In the Server Hierarchy panel, select the check box next to the Satellite that you want to remove from the zone.
- 4 Click *Action > Remove Satellite Server*.



5 To confirm the removal, click *OK*.

6 As necessary, reconfigure the managed devices that used the Satellite so that they can continue to receive content and roll up collection information.

For more information, see [Section 9.1, “Setting Up Closest Server Rules,” on page 91](#).

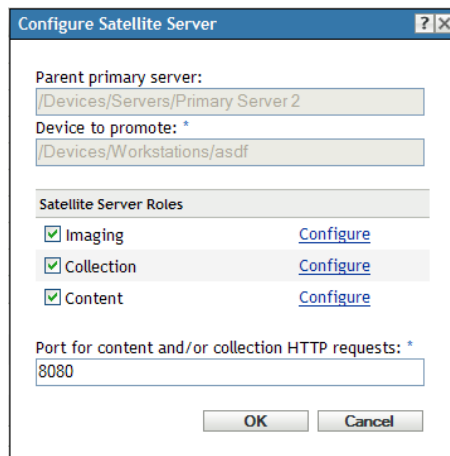
- 7 (Conditional) The Imaging role is immediately removed from the device. If the role is not immediately removed, it is removed only during the next device refresh schedule. However, if you want to immediately remove the role from the device, you must manually refresh the device in one of the following ways:
 - ♦ In the *Configuration* tab > the *Server Hierarchy*, select the check box next to the devices you want to refresh, then click *Action > Refresh Device*.
 - ♦ On the managed device, right-click the  icon, then click *Refresh*.

4.4 Configuring Satellites from the Server Hierarchy

You can configure a Satellite with the Content, Imaging, and Collection roles, change its default port, and adjust the schedules for the roles.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Server Hierarchy panel, select the check box next to the device that you want to configure.

You can only configure one Satellite at a time.
- 3 Click *Action > Configure Satellite Server*.



The dialog box titled "Configure Satellite Server" contains the following fields and sections:

- Parent primary server:** A text field containing the path `/Devices/Servers/Primary Server 2`.
- Device to promote: *** A text field containing the path `/Devices/Workstations/asdf`.
- Satellite Server Roles:** A section with three rows, each containing a checked checkbox and a "Configure" link:
 - ☒ Imaging [Configure](#)
 - ☒ Collection [Configure](#)
 - ☒ Content [Configure](#)
- Port for content and/or collection HTTP requests: *** A text field containing the value `8080`.
- At the bottom are **OK** and **Cancel** buttons.

- 4 In the *Satellite Server Roles* section, configure the desired roles.

If the *Configure* link is disabled for any role, that role is disabled for this device. For example, if the Satellite’s parent Primary Server does not have the Imaging role, the Satellite’s Imaging role is disabled and cannot be configured. Non-configurable roles that a managed device performs are also listed in the dialog box but cannot be edited.

- 4a (Optional) Select the check box next to *Imaging*, then click *Configure*.

Selecting this option installs the Imaging services and adds the Imaging role to the device. With this role, the device can be used as an Imaging server to perform all the Imaging operations, such as taking an image, applying an image, and multicasting an image.

Fill in the fields:

Enable PXE Services: This option automatically starts the Proxy DHCP service on the device to which the Imaging Server role has been assigned.

To check whether the Proxy DHCP service has been started on the device, review the message log of the device (*Devices* tab > *Workstations* folder > click the workstation > *Summary* > Message Log panel).

Delete Image Files from the Server if Imaging Role is Removed: This option deletes the ZENworks image files stored on the device if its Imaging role is removed.

The messages are logged in the Message Log panel if the severity level of the local file and the system log is set to *Information and Above* on the Local Device Logging page. (*Configuration* tab > *Device Management* > *Local Device Logging*).

This option is available only when you want to remove the Imaging Server role from the device.

4b (Optional) Select the check box next to *Collection*, then click *Configure*.

This role causes the device to collect inventory information, messages (errors, warning, informational, and so forth), and policy and bundle statuses, then rolls that information up to its parent Primary Server, which in turn either writes to the database directly or passes the information to its parent Primary Server, which does the database writing.

The Collection Roll-Up schedule determines how often the collected inventory information is rolled up to the parent Primary Server for inclusion in the ZENworks database. When the information is in the database, it is viewable in ZENworks Control Center.

To specify the devices that use the Collection Roll-Up role, configure the *Closest Server Rules* setting in the *Management Zone* settings on the *Configuration* page.

Fill in the field:

Collection Roll-Up Schedule: Specify the number of days, hours, and minutes for how often you want the collected inventory data to be rolled up from the devices that use it as a collection server.

4c (Optional) Select the check box next to *Content*, then click *Configure*.

This managed device can distribute content (bundles and policies) to other devices. When you set up a device to function with a Content role, you must specify a Primary Server as its parent. The device with the Content role receives all content from its parent Primary Server.

The Content Replication schedule determines how often content is sent down from the parent Primary Server to its child Satellite.

After you enable the Content role, the Satellite receives content that it can send to other devices in its network segment.

To specify the devices that need content from this Satellite, configure the *Closest Server Rules* setting in the *Management Zone* settings on the *Configuration* page.

Fill in the field:


Content Replication Schedule: Specify the number of days, hours, and minutes for how often you want the Satellite's content to be updated from the parent Primary Server.

5 (Optional) In the *Port for Content and/or Collection HTTP Requests* field, specify the port number.

The default port is 80. Content and Collection servers share the same Web server and the same port. Make sure that the specified port is not in use.

- 6 Click *OK* to save your changes and exit the dialog box.
- 7 (Optional) Specify the content to host on the Content Server. For more information, see [Section 8.2, “Including or Excluding Content,” on page 86](#).

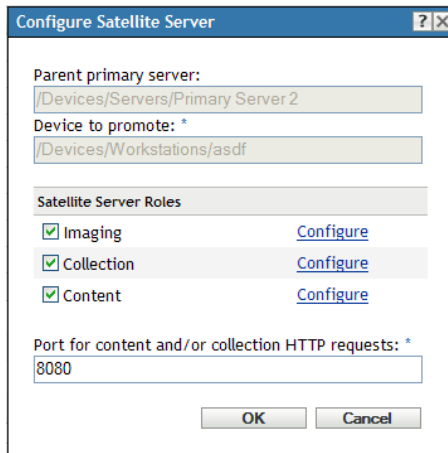
If you want to specify the content that the Satellite hosts, you can include or exclude content from being replicated to it.

If you want to include content that its parent Primary Server does not have, you must first add the content to the parent Primary Server.
- 8 Repeat [Step 1](#) through [Step 7](#) to configure other Satellites.
- 9 (Conditional) If you configure the Imaging role, the role is immediately added to the device. If the role is not immediately added, it is added only during the next device refresh schedule. However, if you want to immediately apply the role to the device, you must manually refresh the device in one of the following ways:
 - ♦ In the *Configuration* tab > the *Server Hierarchy*, select the check box next to the devices you want to refresh, click *Action* > *Refresh Device*.
 - ♦ On the managed device, right-click the  icon, then click *Refresh*.

4.5 Configuring Satellites from the Device View

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Devices* tab, then on the *Managed* tab, click either *Servers* or *Workstations*.
- 2 In the Servers or Workstations panel, select the check box for the Satellite that you want to configure.

You can only configure one Satellite at a time.
- 3 Click *Action* > *Configure Satellite Server*.



The dialog box titled "Configure Satellite Server" contains the following fields and sections:

- Parent primary server:** A text field containing the path `/Devices/Servers/Primary Server 2`.
- Device to promote: *** A text field containing the path `/Devices/Workstations/asdf`.
- Satellite Server Roles:** A section with three rows, each containing a checked checkbox and a "Configure" link:
 - ☒ Imaging [Configure](#)
 - ☒ Collection [Configure](#)
 - ☒ Content [Configure](#)
- Port for content and/or collection HTTP requests: *** A text field containing the value `8080`.
- At the bottom are **OK** and **Cancel** buttons.

- 4 In the Satellite Server Roles section, configure the desired roles.

If the *Configure* link is disabled for any role, that role is disabled for this device. For example, if the Satellite's parent Primary Server does not have the Imaging role, the Satellite's Imaging role is disabled and cannot be configured. Non-configurable roles that a managed device performs are also listed in the dialog box but cannot be edited.
- 4a (Optional) Select the check box next to *Imaging*, then click *Configure*.

Selecting this option installs the Imaging services and adds the Imaging role to the device. With this role, the device can be used as an Imaging server to perform all the Imaging operations, such as taking an image, applying the image, and multicasting an image.

Fill in the fields:

Enable PXE Services: This option automatically starts the Proxy DHCP service on the device to which the Imaging Server role has been assigned.

To check whether the Proxy DHCP service has been started on the device, review the message log of the device (*Devices* tab > *Workstations* folder > click the workstation > *Summary* > Message Log panel).

Delete Image Files from the Server if Imaging Role is Removed: This option deletes the ZENworks image files stored on the device if its Imaging role is removed.

The messages are logged in the Message Log panel if the severity level of the local file and the system log is set to *Information and Above* on the Local Device Logging page. (*Configuration* tab > *Device Management* > *Local Device Logging*).

This option is available only when you want to remove the Imaging Server role from the device.

4b (Optional) Select the check box next to *Collection*, then click *Configure*.

This role causes the device to collect inventory information, messages (errors, warning, informational, and so forth), and policy and bundle statuses, then rolls that information up to its parent Primary Server, which in turn either writes to the database directly or passes the information to its parent Primary Server, which does the database writing.

The Collection Roll-Up schedule determines how often the collected inventory information is rolled up to the parent Primary Server for inclusion in the ZENworks database. When the information is in the database, it is viewable in ZENworks Control Center.

To specify the devices that use the Collection Roll-Up role, configure the *Closest Server Rules* setting in the *Management Zone* settings on the *Configuration* page.

Fill in the field:

Collection Roll-Up Schedule: Specify the number of days, hours, and minutes for how often you want the collected inventory data to be rolled up from the devices that use it as a collection server.

4c (Optional) Select the check box next to *Content*, then click *Configure*.

This managed device can distribute content (bundles and policies) to other devices. When you set up a device to function with a Content role, you must specify a Primary Server as its parent. The device with the Content role receives all content from its parent Primary Server.

The Content Replication schedule determines how often content is sent down from the parent Primary Server to its child Satellite.

After you enable the Content role, the Satellite receives content that it can send to other devices in its network segment.

To specify the devices that need content from this Satellite, configure the *Closest Server Rules* setting in the *Management Zone* settings on the *Configuration* page.

Fill in the field:

Content Replication Schedule: Specify the number of days, hours, and minutes for how often you want the Satellite's content to be updated from the parent Primary Server.

- 5 (Optional) In the *Port for Content and/or Collection HTTP Requests* field, specify the port number.

The default port is 80. Content and Collection servers share the same Web server and the same port. Make sure that the specified port is not in use.

- 6 Click *OK* to confirm the changes.

If you enabled one or more roles, the Satellite's role icon is added to the Server Hierarchy panel in the *Roles* column.

Server Hierarchy				
Move Action Dev Tab				
Name	Folder	Roles	Write to Database	
<input type="checkbox"/> krobinsion2	/Devices/Servers	All		
<input type="checkbox"/> Primary_Server_1	/Devices/Servers	All		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Satellite_Server_1	/Devices/Servers			
<input type="checkbox"/> Satellite_Server_2	/Devices/Servers			
<input type="checkbox"/> DP_1	/Devices/Servers			
<input type="checkbox"/> DP_2	/Devices/Servers			
<input type="checkbox"/> RP_1	/Devices/Servers			
<input type="checkbox"/> Primary_Server_2	/Devices/Servers	All		

Icon	Description
------	-------------



Indicates a Satellite with the Imaging role. With this role, the device can be used as an Imaging server to perform all the Imaging operations, such as taking an image, applying the image, and multicasting an image.



Indicates a Satellite with the Collection role. With this role, the device collects inventory information, messages (errors, warning, informational, and so forth), and policy and bundle statuses, then rolls that information up to its parent Primary Server, which in turn either writes to the database directly or passes the information to its parent Primary Server, which does the database writing.



Indicates a Satellite with the Content role. With this role, the device can distribute content (bundles and policies) to other devices. When you set up a device to function with a Content role, you must specify a Primary Server as its parent. The device with the Content role receives all content from its parent Primary Server.

If you disabled a role, the Satellite's role icon is removed from the Server Hierarchy panel. If the Satellite had only one role and you removed it, that device is no longer listed in the Hierarchy panel. Its Satellite functionality is no longer available, and its content, imaging, or collection roll-up information is removed from the device.

- 7 (Optional) If you disabled all of the Satellite's roles, reconfigure the devices that were dependent on its roles to recognize a different server with those functions.

For more information, see [Section 9.1, "Setting Up Closest Server Rules," on page 91](#).

- 8 (Conditional) If you configure the Imaging role, the role is immediately added to the device. If the role is not immediately added, it is added only during the next device refresh schedule. However, if you want to immediately apply the role to the device, you must manually refresh the device in one of the following ways:

- In the *Configuration* tab > the *Server Hierarchy*, select the check box next to the devices you want to refresh, click *Action* > *Refresh Device*.
- On the managed device, right-click the icon, then click *Refresh*.

4.6 Specifying Content to Be Hosted

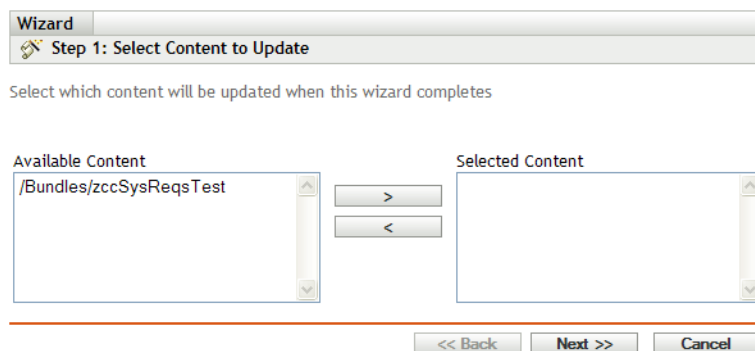
You can specify which content is included or excluded on specific Primary Servers or Satellites performing the Content role.

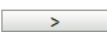
Because Content role devices retrieve their content from their parent Primary Servers, any content that you want hosted on a Satellite must also be hosted on its parent Primary Server.

When you create relationships between content and content servers (ZENworks Primary Servers and Satellites) by using the Select Content to Update Wizard, these relationships override any existing relationships. For example, assume that you want Bundle A and Policy B to be hosted on Server 1 but not on Server 2. Currently, the content is hosted on both servers. You select Bundle A and Policy B, then using the Select Content to Update Wizard to include the content on Server 1 and exclude it from Server 2. During the next scheduled replication, Bundle A and Policy B are removed from Server 2.

To specify the content to be hosted:

- 1 Select the check boxes next to the Satellites (running the Content role) that you want to designate as the hosts for one or more pieces of content.
- 2 Click *Action > Specify Content* to launch the Select Content to Update Wizard.



- 3 In the *Available Content* list, select the desired content.
You can use Shift+click and Ctrl+click to select multiple bundles or policies.
- 4 Click  to move the selected content to the *Selected Content* list.
- 5 Click *Next*.
- 6 Click *Finish* to create the relationships between the content and the content servers.

Depending on the relationships created, the content is replicated to or removed from content servers during the next scheduled replication.

4.7 Specifying a Different Repository for the Content Role Satellite (Windows Only)

The content repository is located in the following default path on Windows Satellites:

`installation_path\zenworks\work\content-repo`

To change the default path to another location accessible to the server:

- 1 Make sure that the disk drive you want to use is attached to the Satellite and is properly formatted.
You do not need to specify a drive letter, but the server must recognize the hardware.
- 2 Make sure that there is no content in the default location (`installation_path\zenworks\work\content-repo`) by doing one of the following:
 - ♦ If the `content-repo` directory is not present in the path given above, create the `content-repo` directory in that path.
 - ♦ If you need to save the content that is now in this directory, rename the existing directory and create a new empty directory named `content-repo`.
You can later copy the content from the renamed directory to the new content repository location (see [Step 9](#)).
 - ♦ If you do not need any of the content in the existing `content-repo` directory, delete the directory and re-create the `content-repo` directory.

An empty `content-repo` directory must exist to act as the pointer to the new content repository location for the Satellite.

- 3 Click *Start*, right-click the *My Computer* icon, then select *Manage*.
You can also click *Start*, then enter `compmgmt.msc` at the *Run* command line.
- 4 Select *Disk Management* under the *Storage* section in the left pane.
The disk drive you selected in [Step 1](#) should be displayed.
- 5 Right-click the partition of the disk drive that you want to use as your content repository on the Satellite, then select *Change Drive Letter and Paths*.
This is the disk drive (see [Step 1](#)) that you will mount to the `content-repo` directory.
- 6 Click *Add*.
This displays the Add Drive Letter or Path dialog box.
- 7 Select *Mount in the Following Empty NTFS Folder*, then browse for and select the `content-repo` directory:
`installation_path\zenworks\work\content-repo`
- 8 Click *OK* as necessary to exit and save the configuration change.
- 9 If necessary (see [Step 2](#)), move the files from the old renamed `content-repo` directory to the new `content-repo` directory.
This copies the files to the hard drive that you have selected for your new content repository.

4.8 Troubleshooting Satellites

The following section provides solutions to the problems you might encounter while working with Satellites:

- ♦ “Unable to add the Satellite with Imaging role to a Windows managed device by using the `zman ssc command`” on page 63

- ♦ “Unable to remove the Satellite with Imaging role from a Windows device by using the `zman ssd` command” on page 63
- ♦ “The managed device is not promoted to the Imaging Satellite role even though the role has been assigned to it” on page 63

Unable to add the Satellite with Imaging role to a Windows managed device by using the `zman ssc` command

Source: ZENworks 10 Configuration Management; Satellite Server.

Action: To promote the Windows managed device to Satellite with Imaging role, use the `zman ssaimg` command.

For more information about the `zman ssaimg` command, view the `zman man` page (`man zman`) on the ZENworks Server or see “[Satellite Commands](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

Unable to remove the Satellite with Imaging role from a Windows device by using the `zman ssd` command

Source: ZENworks 10 Configuration Management; Satellite.

Action: To remove the Imaging Satellite role from the Windows managed device, use the `zman ssrimg` command.

This command does not remove other Satellite roles such as Content or Collection if they are assigned to the device.


For more information about the `zman ssrimg` command, view the `zman man` page (`man zman`) on the ZENworks Server or see “[Satellite Commands](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

The managed device is not promoted to the Imaging Satellite role even though the role has been assigned to it

Source: ZENworks 10 Configuration Management; Satellite.

Possible Cause: The managed device is unable to contact the Primary Server because of the firewall settings configured on the managed device.

Action: Do the following on the managed device:

- 1 Disable the firewall settings.
- 2 Ping the Primary Server to make sure that the managed device can contact the server.
- 3 Refresh the  icon.

Your Management Zone's server hierarchy determines the relationships among the ZENworks® Primary Servers and Satellites and their roles. These relationships control the flow of content and information within the zone. Proper configuration can help you to minimize network traffic between network segments connected by slow links.

- ♦ [Section 5.1, “Primary Servers: Peer Versus Parent/Child Relationships,” on page 65](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.2, “Satellite Role Relationships,” on page 65](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.3, “Changing the Parent-Child Relationships of Primary Servers,” on page 66](#)

5.1 Primary Servers: Peer Versus Parent/Child Relationships

By default, each Primary Server that you add to the system is created as a peer to all other Primary Servers. Being in a peer relationship enables a Primary Server to:

- ♦ Have direct write access to the ZENworks database so that it can add information (inventory, messages, and status).
- ♦ Retrieve device configuration information directly from the database.
- ♦ Pull content (bundles and policies) from any Primary Server.

Direct write access to the ZENworks database requires a JDBC*/ODBC connection. If a Primary Server is located on the network so that it cannot effectively access the ZENworks database via a JDBC/ODBC connection, you can configure the Primary Server to be a child of another Primary Server that does have direct write access to the database.

Being in a child relationship requires a Primary Server to use HTTP to roll up inventory, message, and status information to its parent Primary Server, which then writes the information to the database. However, the child Primary Server still retrieves configuration information from the database and passes configuration information back up to the database. For this reason, the child Primary Server must have a direct connection to the ZENworks database.

In general, you should try to maintain peer relationships between your Primary Servers unless your network connections do not allow it.

5.2 Satellite Role Relationships

A Satellite is a device that can perform certain roles that a ZENworks Primary Server normally performs. A Satellite can be any managed Windows device (server or workstation), but not a Primary Server. When you configure a Satellite, you specify which roles it performs (Imaging, Collection, or Content). A Satellite can also perform roles that might be added by third-party products that are snap-ins to the ZENworks 10 Configuration Management framework. For more information about the tasks you can perform on Satellites, see [Chapter 4, “Satellites,” on page 51](#).

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [Section 5.2.1, “Content Role Server Relationships,” on page 66](#)

- ♦ [Section 5.2.2, “Collection Role Server Relationships,” on page 66](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.2.3, “Imaging Role Server Relationships,” on page 66](#)

5.2.1 Content Role Server Relationships

A Content role identifies a managed device that is able to distribute content (bundles and policies) to other devices. When you set up a device to function with a Content role, you must specify a Primary Server as its parent. The device with the Content role receives all content from its parent Primary Server.

5.2.2 Collection Role Server Relationships

A Collection role causes a managed device to collect inventory information, messages (errors, warning, informational, and so forth), and policy and bundle statuses, then rolls that information up to its parent Primary Server, which in turn either writes to the database directly or passes the information on to its parent Primary Server which does the database writing.

5.2.3 Imaging Role Server Relationships

An Imaging role causes a managed device to take and restore images within as well as across subnets by using unicast or multicast imaging.

5.3 Changing the Parent-Child Relationships of Primary Servers

You can move a Primary Server to be a peer or child of other Primary Servers:

- ♦ [Section 5.3.1, “Making a Primary Server a Child,” on page 66](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.3.2, “Making a Primary Server a Peer,” on page 67](#)

5.3.1 Making a Primary Server a Child

You can place a Primary Server as a child of another Primary Server. This child Primary Server no longer writes collection data directly to the ZENworks database; instead, it passes its information on to its parent Primary Server which does the database writing. However, the child Primary Server still retrieves configuration information from the database and passes configuration information back up to the database. For this reason, the child Primary Server must have a direct connection to the ZENworks database

To make a Primary Server a child of another server:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Server Hierarchy panel, select the check box next to the Primary Server you want to make a child.
- 3 Click *Move* to display the *Move Device* dialog box.
- 4 Select the Primary Server that you want to be its parent server.
- 5 Click *OK*.

You cannot change the level or location of a Satellite by using the *Move* option.

5.3.2 Making a Primary Server a Peer

This places the Primary Server back to the first level of the hierarchy, or moves it to be a child of another Primary Server if it is nested more than one level deep.

If you move a Primary Server back to the first level, it writes directly to the ZENworks database.

To make a child Primary Server a peer to your other servers, or to change its parent server:

- 1** In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2** In the Server Hierarchy panel, select the check box next to the Primary Server you want to make a peer.
- 3** Click *Move* to display the *Move Device* dialog box.
- 4** Do one of the following:
 - ♦ Select *None* to move it up to the first level of servers in the listing.
 - ♦ Select another Primary Server to be the parent server.
- 5** Click *OK*.

ZENworks Adaptive Agent

6

The ZENworks® Adaptive Agent is part of the Novell® ZENworks 10 Configuration Management software that lets a ZENworks administrator manage devices over the network. The ZENworks Adaptive Agent, commonly referred to as the Adaptive Agent, provides services that help an administrator do the following without visiting individual devices:

- ♦ Deliver software, patches, and other files to devices.
- ♦ Manage policies that determine the behavior of devices.
- ♦ Take inventory of device hardware and software.
- ♦ Access devices from a remote location to troubleshoot and fix problems with hardware and software.

Each of these services is provided through the use of modules that plug in to the Adaptive Agent. The default modules included with the Adaptive Agent are the Policies module, Bundles module, Inventory module, Remote Management module, and Satellite module. Depending on the services implemented by the administrator, one or more of these modules might not be active on devices. For example, if an administrator does not intend to remotely access workstations, the Remote Management module might not be installed.

You can use ZENworks Control Center to configure the ZENworks Adaptive Agent's settings.

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [Section 6.1, "Configuring Adaptive Agent Settings," on page 69](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.2, "Configuring ZENworks Explorer," on page 75](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.3, "Troubleshooting the Adaptive Agent," on page 78](#)

6.1 Configuring Adaptive Agent Settings

You can choose whether or not to let users uninstall the Adaptive Agent, configure the Agent's cache, set retry settings, and enable or disable the Remote Management agent.

You can configure settings at three levels:

- ♦ **Management Zone:** The setting applies to all devices in the Management Zone.
- ♦ **Device Folder:** The setting applies to all devices contained within the folder or its subfolders. Overrides the Management Zone setting.
- ♦ **Device:** The setting applies only to the device for which it is configured. Overrides the settings established at the Management Zone and folder levels.

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [Section 6.1.1, "Configuring Agent Settings on the Management Zone Level," on page 70](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.1.2, "Configuring Agent Settings on the Device Folder Level," on page 71](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.1.3, "Configuring Agent Settings on the Device Level," on page 71](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.1.4, "ZENworks Agent Settings," on page 72](#)

6.1.1 Configuring Agent Settings on the Management Zone Level

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.



- 2 In the *Management Zone Settings* panel, click *Device Management*.

Configuration	Registration	System Information	Asset Inventory	Asset Management	System Updates
Management Zone Settings					
Content					
Device Management					
Category	Description	Is Configured			
Local Device Logging	Enable and configure local logging of warnings and errors encountered by managed devices.	Yes			
Device Refresh Schedule	Configure the device refresh interval.	Yes			
ZENworks Agent	ZENworks Agent Configuration.	No			
Registration	Configure registration settings.	Yes			
Preboot Services	Configure Preboot Services.	No			
Primary User	Configure the setting for how the primary user is determined.	No			
Primary Workstation	Configure the setting for how the primary workstation is determined.	No			
Dynamic Group Refresh Schedule	Configure dynamic group refresh schedule.	No			
Wake-on-LAN	Configure the Wake-on-LAN settings	No			
Remote Management	Enable and configure remote management.	Yes			
Discovery and Deployment					
Event and Messaging					
Infrastructure Management					
Inventory					
Reporting Services					
Asset Management					
Patch Management Services					

- 3 Click *ZENworks Agent*.

ZENworks Agent

ZENworks Agent Configuration.

General

☒ Allow users to uninstall agent

Cache life: 336 hour(s)

Cache orphaning threshold: 90 day(s)

Times to ping unknown host: 3

Times to retry requests to a busy server: 15

Initial retry request wait (each subsequent request incremented by 1 second): 4 second(s)

Maximum retry request wait: 16 second(s)

Enable/Disable Agents

Remote Management Agent: ☒ Enabled ☐ Uninstalled

OK

Apply

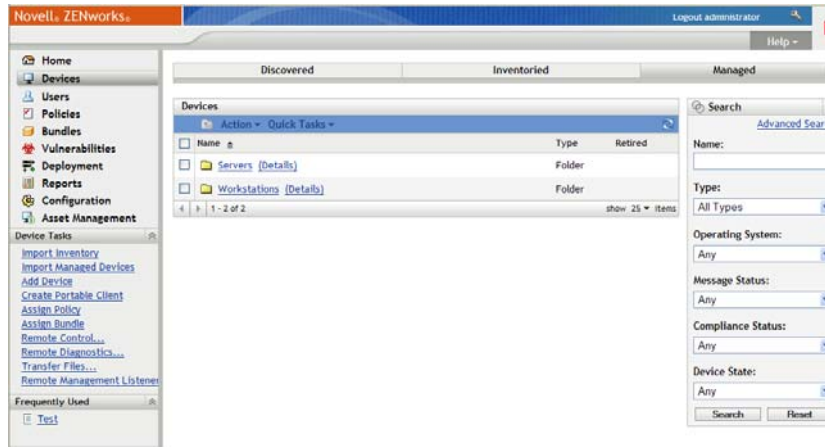
Reset

Cancel

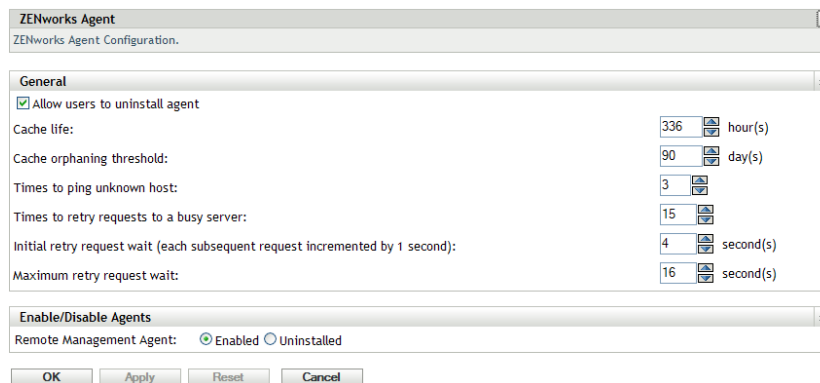
- 4 Fill in the fields. For more information, see [Section 6.1.4, “ZENworks Agent Settings,” on page 72](#).
- 5 Click *OK* to apply the changes.

6.1.2 Configuring Agent Settings on the Device Folder Level

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Devices* tab.



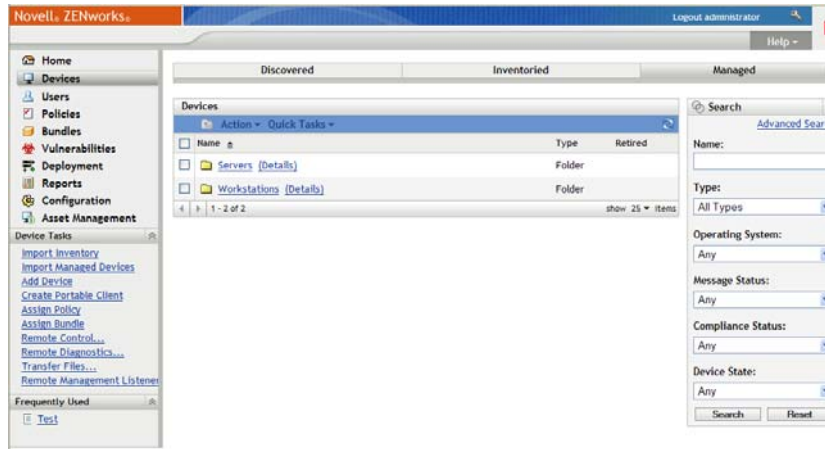
- 2 Click the *Servers* or *Workstations* folder.
- 3 Click *Details* next to the folder for which you want to configure settings.
- 4 Click the *Settings* tab, click *Device Management*, then click *ZENworks Agent*.



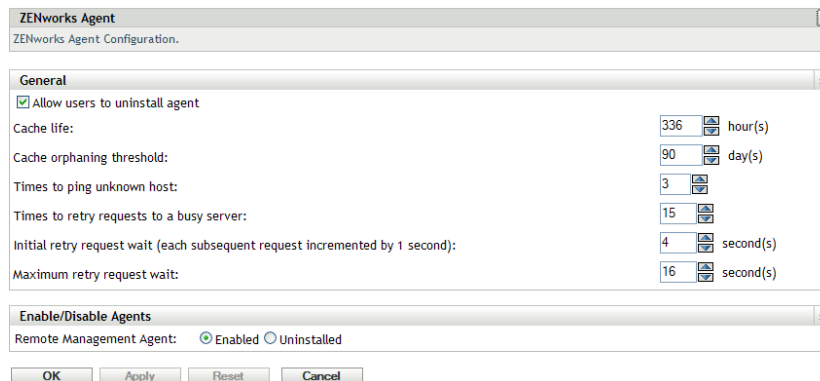
- 5 Fill in the fields. For more information, see [Section 6.1.4, “ZENworks Agent Settings,” on page 72](#).
- 6 Click *OK* to apply the changes.

6.1.3 Configuring Agent Settings on the Device Level

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Devices* tab.



- 2 Click the *Servers* or *Workstations* folder.
- 3 Click the device for which you want to configure settings.
- 4 Click the *Settings* tab, click *Device Management*, then click *ZENworks Agent*.



- 5 Fill in the fields. For more information, see [Section 6.1.4, “ZENworks Agent Settings,” on page 72](#).
- 6 Click *OK* to apply the changes.

6.1.4 ZENworks Agent Settings

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [“General” on page 72](#)
- ♦ [“Enable/Disable Agents” on page 74](#)

General

You can configure the ZENworks Adaptive Agent’s cache, whether or not users can uninstall the Adaptive Agent, and set retry settings:

- ♦ **Allow Users to Uninstall Agent:** Enable this option if you want users to be able to uninstall the ZENworks Adaptive Agent.

- ♦ **Cache Life:** The ZENworks Adaptive Agent's cache directory contains content data used by the agent. Each piece of data, referred to as a cache entry, is stored in the cache database.

When a cache entry is added to the cache database, it is assigned a creation time and an expiration time. The creation time is simply the time it was added to the database. The expiration time is the creation time plus the number of hours specified by the *Cache Life* setting (by default, 336 hours or 14 days). For example, suppose that a cache entry is added on June 10 at 3:00 p.m. With the default *Cache Life* setting, the expiration time is set to June 24 at 3:00 p.m.

The agent does not attempt to update a cache entry until after the entry's expiration time. At that point, the agent updates the cache entry the next time it contacts the ZENworks Server to refresh its information.

NOTE: Updates to expired cache entries occur only for cache entries that are content-related (bundles, policies, configuration settings, registration settings, and so forth). Updates to cache entries that are event-related (remote management, inventory, reporting, and so forth) only occur at the time the event takes place on the device.

A higher *Cache Life* setting reduces the traffic load on your network because cache entries are refreshed less frequently. A lower setting provides newer information but increases the traffic load.

It is important to note that this setting affects only how often the agent requests updates to a cache entry. Cache entries can also be updated before their expiration time if information is changed in ZENworks Control Center that causes the information to be pushed from the ZENworks Server to the agent.

- ♦ **Cache Orphaning Threshold:** Over a period of time, it is possible for entries to be inserted in the cache database but not removed. This can cause the cache to grow unnecessarily.

An orphan is an entry that is inserted into the cache but not accessed within the number of days specified by the *Cache Orphaning Threshold* setting. For example, suppose that a cache entry is accessed on July 1 at 10:00 a.m. Without the default *Cache Orphaning Threshold* setting (30 days), the entry becomes an orphan if it is not accessed again before July 31 at 10:00 a.m.

A higher *Cache Orphaning Threshold* setting ensures that infrequently accessed information is not removed from the cache database. A lower setting can reduce the cache size.

- ♦ **Times to Ping Unknown Host:** Lets you specify the number of times that ZENworks Adaptive Agent pings an unknown host. The default value is 3. The maximum value that you can specify is 5.

Before the agent makes a Web service call to an unknown host, the connection manager pings the host IP (this is not an ICMP echo request, but an actual Web service call). The ping request has an above-average priority and serves two purposes:

- ♦ It lets the agent know if the IP is unavailable, which causes the agent to skip all future requests to that address.
 - ♦ Because the ping request has a higher priority than subsequent Web service calls, it lets the agent distinguish between a timeout caused by an unavailable server and a timeout caused by a busy server.
- ♦ **Times to Retry Requests to a Busy Server:** Lets you specify the number of times that the agent retries a request to a busy server before considering the server as bad instead of busy. The default value is 15. The maximum value that you can specify is 20.

- ♦ **Initial Retry Request Wait:** The *Initial Retry Request Wait* setting lets you specify the initial amount of time that the agent waits before retrying a Web service request after receiving a busy response from the server. The wait time increases by one second with every busy response. The default setting is four seconds. The maximum value that you can set is ten seconds. Each subsequent request is incremented by one second.

For example, suppose that you leave this setting at the default (four seconds). After receiving a busy response from the server, the agent waits four seconds for the first retry attempt. If the server is still busy, the agent waits five additional seconds ($4 + 1$) before making the second retry attempt. The third retry attempt is 15 seconds after the initial retry attempt ($4 + 5 + 6$). The time increments until the value specified in the *Maximum Retry Request Wait* setting is reached. The retry attempts stop when the value specified in the *Times to Retry Requests to a Busy Server* setting is reached.

- ♦ **Maximum Retry Request Wait:** Lets you specify the maximum amount of time to wait before retrying a Web service request after receiving a busy response from the server.

The default setting is 16 seconds. The maximum value that you can specify is 20 seconds.

Enable/Disable Agents

The ZENworks[®] Adaptive Agent uses modules to perform the following functions on managed devices:

- ♦ Bundles
- ♦ Policies
- ♦ Remote Management

By default, all modules are installed on a device. However, you can uninstall any of the modules. You can also disable (or enable) any of the installed modules.

You can cause the Remote Management module to not be installed with the Adaptive Agent. You do this by selecting the *Uninstalled* option. The other modules (Bundles, Policies, and Inventory) cannot be disabled; they are always installed.

IMPORTANT: Changing this option does not cause the Remote Management module to be uninstalled from currently managed devices. It only causes it to not be installed to new devices.

Depending on many factors, when you install, uninstall or disable a module the setting might not take effect immediately.

- ♦ If you disable the Bundle Management module while a bundle is being applied to the device, the module is disabled after the bundle is applied and the device is refreshed.
- ♦ If you disable or uninstall the Policy Management module on a device that is running a Dynamic Local User (DLU) policy, the module is disabled or uninstalled after the device is rebooted.
- ♦ If you install the Remote Management or Image Management module on a device, the device must be rebooted for the install to be effective.

- ♦ If you disable or uninstall the User Management module, the Roaming Profile policy is not enforced on a device even if the user to whom the policy is assigned has logged in to the device.
- ♦ If you disable or uninstall the User Management module, the Windows Group Policy with user configuration settings is not enforced on the managed device even if the policy is assigned to the device.

You can install, uninstall, enable or disable the Remote Management module at three levels:

- ♦ **Management Zone:** The setting applies to all devices in the Management Zone.
- ♦ **Device Folder:** The setting applies to all devices contained within the folder or its subfolders. Overrides the Management Zone setting.
- ♦ **Device:** The setting applies only to the device for which it is configured. Overrides the settings established at the Management Zone and folder levels.

To enable or disable the Remote Management Agent module:

- 1 If you are configuring the setting on a device folder or device, click *Override settings* to activate the Enable/Disable Agents panel.
- 2 Click *Enabled* to have the module installed with the Adaptive Agent, or click *Uninstalled* to not have it installed.
- 3 Click *OK* to apply the changes.

6.2 Configuring ZENworks Explorer

You can configure common settings at three levels for the ZENworks Explorer component of the ZENworks Adaptive Agent:

- ♦ **Management Zone:** The settings are inherited by all device folders and devices.
- ♦ **Device Folder:** The bundle settings are inherited by all devices contained within the folder or its subfolders.
- ♦ **Device:** The bundle settings apply only to the device for which they are configured.

The following sections contain more information:

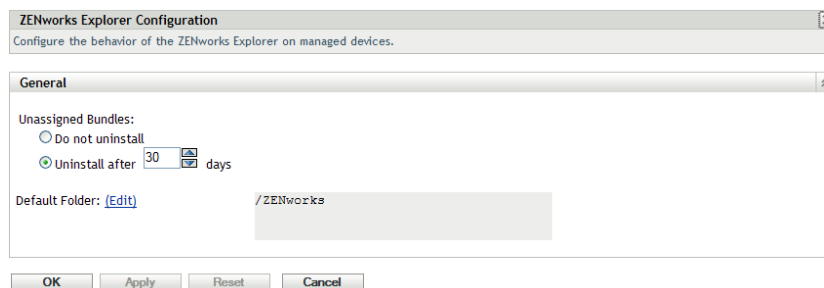
- ♦ [Section 6.2.1, “Configuring ZENworks Explorer Settings on the Management Zone Level,” on page 76](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.2.2, “Configuring ZENworks Explorer Settings on the Device Folder Level,” on page 76](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.2.3, “Configuring ZENworks Explorer Settings on the Device Level,” on page 77](#)

6.2.1 Configuring ZENworks Explorer Settings on the Management Zone Level

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.



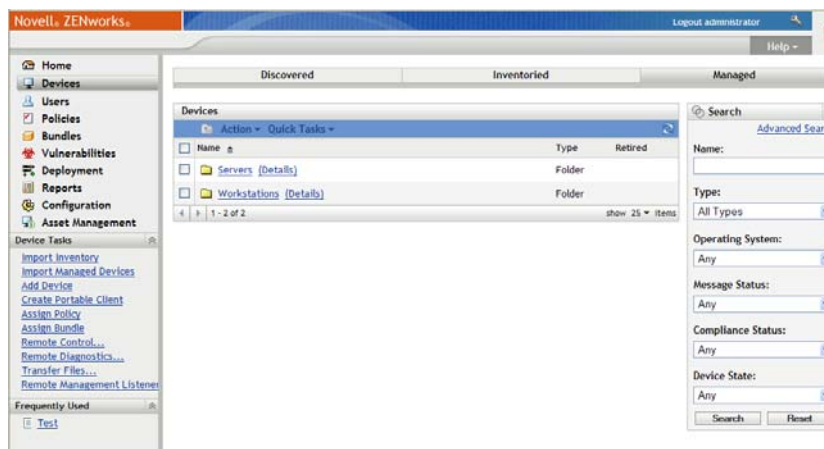
- 2 Click the *Content* tab.
- 3 Click *ZENworks Explorer Configuration*.



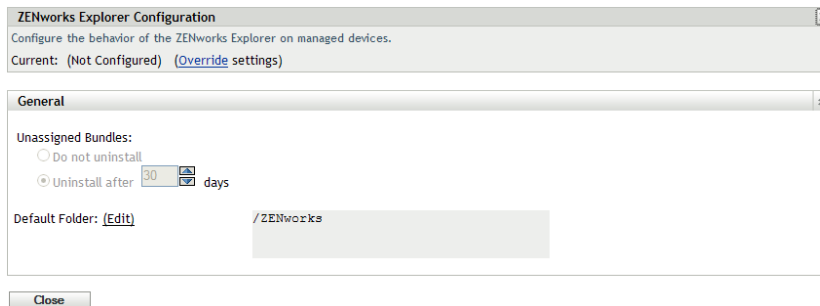
- 4 Fill in the fields. For more information, see [Section 6.2.4, “ZENworks Explorer General Settings,”](#) on page 78.
- 5 Click *OK* to apply the changes.

6.2.2 Configuring ZENworks Explorer Settings on the Device Folder Level

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Devices* tab.



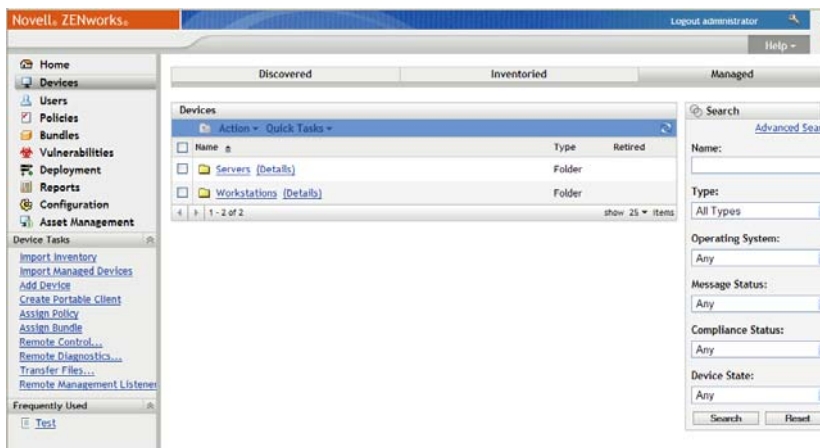
- 2 Click the *Servers* or *Workstations* folder.
- 3 Click *Details* next to the folder for which you want to configure settings.
- 4 Click the *Settings* tab, click *Content*, then click *ZENworks Explorer Configuration*.



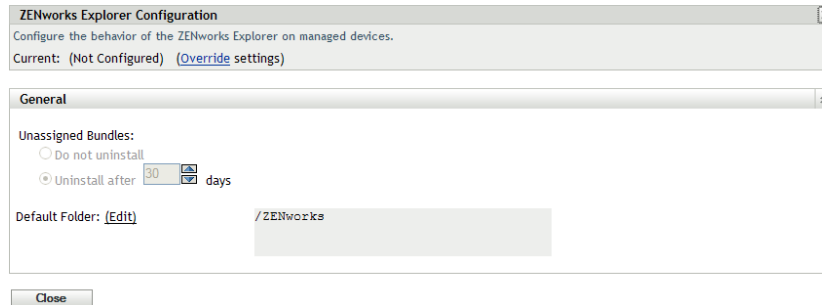
- 5 Click *Override Settings*.
If you are configuring the settings on a device folder or a device, you need to click *Override Settings* before you can select any of the settings.
- 6 Fill in the fields. For more information, see [Section 6.2.4, “ZENworks Explorer General Settings,” on page 78](#).
- 7 Click *OK* to apply the changes.

6.2.3 Configuring ZENworks Explorer Settings on the Device Level

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Devices* tab.



- 2 Click the *Servers* or *Workstations* folder.
- 3 Click the device for which you want to configure settings.
- 4 Click the *Settings* tab, click the *Content* tab, then click *ZENworks Explorer Configuration*.



5 Click *Override Settings*.

If you are configuring the settings on a device folder or a device, you need to click *Override Settings* before you can select any of the settings.

6 Fill in the fields. For more information, see [Section 6.2.4, “ZENworks Explorer General Settings,” on page 78](#).

7 Click *OK* to apply the changes.

6.2.4 ZENworks Explorer General Settings

You can use the ZENworks Explorer General panel to configure ZENworks Explorer to uninstall a bundle that is no longer assigned to the device, specify the number of days to wait before uninstalling the bundle, and specify the default folder that ZENworks Explorer uses:

- ♦ **Unassigned Bundles:** Select whether or not you want a bundle to be uninstalled after it is no longer assigned to a device or the device’s user.

If you choose to uninstall the bundle, select the number of days to wait before uninstalling the application. Specify 0 if you want the application to be uninstalled as soon as it is no longer assigned to the device or user.

- ♦ **Default Folder:** ZENworks Explorer displays a default folder (ZENworks) in Windows Explorer, on the Windows Start menu and in the ZENworks Window. Bundles are placed in the default folder unless you override the default folder by specifying a folder on a bundle’s Summary page.

The default folder can be renamed to meet the needs of your organization. Click *Edit* to change the folder name.


6.3 Troubleshooting the Adaptive Agent


The following section provides solutions to the problems you might encounter while working with the ZENworks Adaptive Agent:

- ♦ “Satellite menu is not displayed in the left navigation pane of the ZENworks Adaptive Agent page” on page 78

Satellite menu is not displayed in the left navigation pane of the ZENworks Adaptive Agent page

Source: ZENworks 10 Configuration Management; ZENworks Adaptive Agent.

Explanation: When you promote a device to Satellite through ZENworks Control Center, the configured Satellite role (Collection, Content, or Imaging) is added to the device. However, when you double-click the  icon, the Satellite menu is not displayed in the left navigation pane of the ZENworks Adaptive Agent page.

Action: Refresh the managed device (In the notification area of the device, right-click the  icon, then click *Refresh*).

Content Repository

7

Each ZENworks® Server contains a content repository. The content repository stores all bundle and policy content that has been replicated to the server and any images that have been captured and stored to the server.

A single content repository cannot be shared by multiple Primary Servers. Each server must use its own content repository.

The content repository is self-maintaining. Whenever you add a bundle or policy, the bundle or policy content is added to the appropriate content repositories based upon the replication settings. Whenever you remove a bundle or policy or change which servers host its content, the bundle or policy content is also removed from the appropriate servers.

If necessary, you can move the content repository to a different location. The following sections provide instructions:

- ♦ [Section 7.1, “Changing the Location of the Content Repository on a Windows Server,” on page 81](#)
- ♦ [Section 7.2, “Changing the Location of the Content Repository on a Linux Server,” on page 82](#)

7.1 Changing the Location of the Content Repository on a Windows Server

The content repository is found in the following location on a Windows server:

`installation_path\zenworks\work\content-repo`

You can specify a different disk drive to be your content repository. In Windows, this is done by “mounting” the drive. Mounting is simply pointing an existing path to a hard drive partition without the use of mapped drive letters.

In the following steps, you mount the default content repository location to a disk drive partition, which becomes the new content repository:

- 1 Make sure that the disk drive you want to use is attached to the server and is properly formatted as NTFS.

This disk drive can be an existing or new one for the machine. The hardware must be recognized by the server. However, do not specify a drive letter if you are adding a new disk drive to the machine. Windows does not allow mounting to a drive letter.

- 2 Because an empty `content-repo` directory must exist in the default location (`installation_path\zenworks\work\content-repo`) to be the pointer to the new content repository location, do one of the following to make sure that there is no content in the default location:

- ♦ If you need to save the content that is now in this directory, rename the existing directory and create a new directory named `content-repo`.

You can later copy the content from this renamed directory to the new content repository location (see [Step 10](#)).

- ♦ If you do not need any of the content in the existing `content-repo` directory, delete the directory and re-create it.
 - ♦ If the `content-repo` directory is not present in the path given above, create the path and directory.
- 3** Click *Start*, right-click the *My Computer* icon, then select *Manage*.
You can also click *Start*, then enter `compmgmt.msc` at the *Run* command line.
 - 4** Select *Disk Management* under the *Storage* section in the left pane.
The disk drive you selected in **Step 1** should be displayed in the right pane.
 - 5** (Conditional) If a driver letter is associated with the partition that you want to use as the new content repository location, do the following:
 - 5a** In the Computer Management dialog box, right click the drive's partition.
 - 5b** Select *Change Drive Letter and Paths*.
 - 5c** Select the drive letter.
 - 5d** Click *Remove*, then select *Yes* to confirm.
 - 6** Right-click the partition of the disk drive that you want to use as your content repository, then select *Change Drive Letter and Paths*.
This is the disk drive that you will mount to the `content-repo` directory in **Step 8**.
 - 7** Click *Add*.
This displays the Add Drive Letter or Path dialog box.
 - 8** Select *Mount in the Following Empty NTFS Folder*, browse for and select the default `content-repo` directory, then click *Next*.
The default directory is `installation_path\zenworks\work\content-repo`.
This mounts the default path to the hard drive partition that you selected in **Step 6**.
If necessary, format the drive as NTFS using the Computer Management feature in Windows.
 - 9** Click the buttons as necessary to exit and save the configuration change.
 - 10** (Conditional; see **Step 2**) Copy the files from the old renamed `content-repo` directory to the new `content-repo` directory.

From this point on, all ZENworks 10 Configuration Management data is written directly to the new content repository location on the selected hard drive partition.

7.2 Changing the Location of the Content Repository on a Linux Server

You can store your data on a local mount or on a network share such as NFS, SMB, or CIFS and mount the share in your `content-repo` directory to access your data.

A symbolic link can also be created on your local hard drive if you want to store your data elsewhere on your local device. See the `ln(1)` man page for more information about how to symbolically link directories.

The following sections provide information on managing content repository locations on Linux:

- ♦ **Section 7.2.1, “Mounting a Share,” on page 83**

- ♦ [Section 7.2.2, “Unmounting a Share,” on page 83](#)
- ♦ [Section 7.2.3, “Creating a Permanent Mount,” on page 83](#)
- ♦ [Section 7.2.4, “Moving Existing Content to the New Repository,” on page 84](#)

7.2.1 Mounting a Share

After configuring a share on a remote machine, you can mount it from `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/content-repo` by using the following command:

```
mount -t cifs -o username=username //example.machine.com/share_name /var/opt/novell/zenworks/content-repo
```

In the command, `//example.machine.com/share_name` is the share to mount and `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/content-repo` is the mount point.

If you only need to store the data from part of your content repository on another share, you can also do that. For example, if you need to store your ZENworks image files on another share, you can use the following command:

```
mount -t cifs -o username=username //example.machine.com/share_name /var/opt/novell/zenworks/content-repo/images
```

Or, to store bundle and policy content on another share, you can use the following command:

```
mount -t cifs -o username=username //example.machine.com/share_name /var/opt/novell/zenworks/content-repo/content
```

7.2.2 Unmounting a Share

This mount that you created in [Section 7.2.1, “Mounting a Share,” on page 83](#) is temporary; the share is unmounted when the operating system is shut down or rebooted. You can also use the following command to manually unmount the share:

```
umount /var/opt/novell/zenworks/content-repo
```

7.2.3 Creating a Permanent Mount

To ensure that the mount occurs each time the Linux server starts, you must add the following entry to your `/etc/fstab` configuration file:

```
//example.machine.com/share_name /var/opt/novell/zenworks/content-repo cifs
credentials=path_to_credentials_file 0 0
```

The credentials file listed in the command contains a username and password. For more information, see the `mount.cifs(8)` man page. The format of the credentials file is:

```
username=value
```

```
password=value
```

7.2.4 Moving Existing Content to the New Repository

After you change the location of a content repository by mounting a new share, any content in the old location is no longer available. To make it available, you must move it to the new repository.

Content Replication

8

When you add a bundle or policy that contains files, the files are uploaded to the content repository on the ZENworks® Server. In addition, the ZENworks database is updated to reflect the addition of the bundle or policy and its content.

ZENworks Servers and Distribution Points, collectively referred to as content servers, periodically read the ZENworks database to discover new bundles and policies. Each content server that does not have the bundle or policy content retrieves it from the content server where it resides.

There are a variety of settings you can use to control how content is replicated among content servers in your zone. You can:

- ♦ Specify whether content is replicated to new content servers by default.
- ♦ Manually include content on or exclude content from content servers.
- ♦ Schedule how often replication occurs.
- ♦ Set a limit, or throttle, on the maximum amount of content that is replicated per second from one content server to another.

For information about performing these tasks, see the following sections:

- ♦ [Section 8.1, “Replicating Content to New Content Servers,” on page 85](#)
- ♦ [Section 8.2, “Including or Excluding Content,” on page 86](#)
- ♦ [Section 8.3, “Modifying the Replication Schedule,” on page 88](#)
- ♦ [Section 8.4, “Throttling the Content Replication Rate,” on page 89](#)

8.1 Replicating Content to New Content Servers

By default, when a new content server (ZENworks Server or Distribution Point) is added to the zone, all bundle and policy content is replicated to that content server. You can, however, choose not to replicate a specific bundle or content policy.

For example, assume that you have a bundle for Microsoft® Office. You’ve included it on specific content servers and don’t want it replicated to additional servers. To keep this from happening, you modify the Microsoft Office bundle’s replication settings to exclude replication to new content servers.

- 1** In ZENworks Control Center, go to the details page for the bundle or policy whose replication setting you want to modify.
- 2** Click the *Content Servers* tab.
The Replication Settings panel displays whether new content servers are included (receive the content) or excluded (don’t receive the content).
- 3** In the Replication Settings panel, click *Edit* to display the Include/Exclude New Servers dialog box.
- 4** Select *Included* to include new servers in replication of the content.
or

Select *Excluded* to exclude new servers.

5 Click *OK* to save the changes.

8.2 Including or Excluding Content

The default replication setting determines whether content is automatically replicated to new content servers (see [Section 8.1, “Replicating Content to New Content Servers,” on page 85](#)). You configure the setting for each bundle or policy. If you choose to include a bundle’s or policy’s content on new content servers, it is replicated to all new servers; likewise, if you choose to exclude the content, it is not replicated to any new servers.

In some cases, the default replication settings might not give you the desired replication scope for your content, or the scope might change. If this occurs, you can manually include content on or exclude it from specific content servers. There are three ways to do this:

- ♦ [Section 8.2.1, “Managing a Single Piece of Content on Multiple Content Servers,” on page 86](#)
- ♦ [Section 8.2.2, “Managing Multiple Pieces of Content on a Single Content Server,” on page 87](#)
- ♦ [Section 8.2.3, “Managing Multiple Pieces of Content on Multiple Content Servers,” on page 87](#)

8.2.1 Managing a Single Piece of Content on Multiple Content Servers

This section provides instructions for managing the replication of a single bundle’s or policy’s content to multiple content servers. If you want to manage the replication of the content for multiple bundles or policies to a single content server, see [Section 8.2.2, “Managing Multiple Pieces of Content on a Single Content Server,” on page 87](#).

1 In ZENworks Control Center, go to the details page for the bundle or policy whose content replication you want to manage.

2 Click the *Content Servers* tab.

The Replication Status panel displays all content servers in the zone. If the bundle or policy content is included on a content server, the *Included* column displays a ✓ icon.

3 To change the replication status for a content server, select the check box next to the server, then click *Include* to include the content on the server, or click *Exclude* to exclude the content from the server.

As you include or exclude content servers, be aware of the following replication rules:

- ♦ If a ZENworks Server is the parent server for one or more Distribution Points, you can’t exclude the content from the ZENworks Server without first excluding it from the Distribution Points.
- ♦ If you have only one ZENworks Server in your Management Zone, you can’t exclude the content from it.
- ♦ You can’t include a Distribution Point without first including the Distribution Point’s parent ZENworks Server.

8.2.2 Managing Multiple Pieces of Content on a Single Content Server

This section provides instructions for managing the replication of the content for multiple bundles or policies to a single content servers. If you want to manage the replication of a single bundle's or policy's content to multiple content servers, see [Section 8.2.1, “Managing a Single Piece of Content on Multiple Content Servers,” on page 86](#).

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, go to the details page for the content server whose content replication you want to manage.
- 2 Click the *Content* tab.
The Replication Settings panel displays all bundles and policies in the zone. If the bundle or policy content is included on the content server, the *Included* column displays a ✓ icon.
- 3 To change the replication status for a bundle or policy, select the check box next to the bundle or policy, then click *Include* to include its content on the server, or click *Exclude* to exclude its content from the server.

As you include or exclude content from the server, be aware of the following replication rules:

- ♦ If a ZENworks Server is the parent server for one or more Distribution Points, you can't exclude the content from the ZENworks Server without first excluding it from the Distribution Points.
- ♦ If you have only one ZENworks Server in your Management Zone, you can't exclude the content from it.
- ♦ You can't include a Distribution Point without first including the Distribution Point's parent ZENworks Server.

8.2.3 Managing Multiple Pieces of Content on Multiple Content Servers

You can use the Specify Content Wizard to include or exclude multiple pieces of content on multiple content servers. For example, you might have four bundles that you want included on only two of your four content servers. Rather than managing the replication for the individual bundles (see [Section 8.2.1, “Managing a Single Piece of Content on Multiple Content Servers,” on page 86](#)) or the individual content servers (see [Section 8.2.2, “Managing Multiple Pieces of Content on a Single Content Server,” on page 87](#)), you can use the wizard to manage the replication for all four bundles and content servers at one time.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Devices* tab, then click the *Servers* folder to open it.
- 2 In the *Server Tasks* list in the left navigation pane, click *Specify Content* to launch the wizard.
- 3 Follow the prompts to complete the wizard.

If you need more information about a wizard page, click the *Help* button or refer to the following table:

Wizard Page	Details
Include or Exclude Content Servers/Distribution Points	<p>Move the content servers on which you want to include the content to the <i>Included</i> list. Move the content servers on which you want to exclude the content to the <i>Excluded</i> list.</p> <p>As you include or exclude content servers, be aware of the following replication rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ If a ZENworks Server is the parent server for one or more Distribution Points, you can't exclude content from the ZENworks Server without also excluding it from the Distribution Points.♦ If you have only one ZENworks Server in your Management Zone, you can't exclude the content from it.♦ You can't include a Distribution Point without also including the Distribution Point's parent ZENworks Server.
New Servers Added to the System page	Select whether the content is included on or excluded from content servers added in the future.
Select Content to Update page	Identify the content you want affected by moving it from the <i>Available Content</i> list to the <i>Selected Content</i> list.

You can also launch the Specify Content Wizard from the following locations:

- ♦ Bundles page
- ♦ Policies page
- ♦ Configuration page > Server Hierarchy panel

8.3 Modifying the Replication Schedule

By default, a ZENworks Server checks for new or removed content every five minutes. If you do not add or remove bundles and policies very often, you might want to decrease the frequency of the schedule.

A ZENworks Server uses up to five threads to update the content in its repository during a replication cycle. If the current replication cycle does not complete before the next scheduled cycle, the schedule is ignored and replication automatically continues into the next cycle.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Management Zone Settings panel, click *Content* > *Content Replication*.
- 3 For the *Primary Server Recurring Content Replication Schedule*, use the *Days*, *Hours*, and *Minutes* fields to set the schedule.

You can use any combination of the fields. For example, to specify every 30 hours, you can enter 30 hours or 1 day, 6 hours.

- 4 Click *Apply* or *OK* to save the schedule.

8.4 Throttling the Content Replication Rate

The content replication throttling rate determines the maximum amount of content (in kilobytes per second) that a ZENworks Server transfers when replicating content to other content servers or when distributing content to managed devices.

By default, no throttling rate is imposed, which means that a ZENworks Server uses all available bandwidth. To set a throttling rate:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Management Zone Settings panel, click *Content > Content Replication*.
- 3 In the *Primary Server Output Throttling in KB/Sec* list, select the throttling rate you want.
This rate applies to all ZENworks Servers in your zone. You cannot set individual throttling rates.
- 4 Click *Apply* or *OK* to save the changes.

Content delivery, or distribution, refers to the process of transferring bundle and policy content from a content server (ZENworks® Primary Server or Satellite with the Content role) to a managed device.

There are a variety of settings you can use to determine how content is delivered to managed devices, such as setting up Closest Server rules, setting delivery blackout dates for when content can't be downloaded, and setting how often you want managed devices to look for new content to download.

For information about performing these tasks, see the following sections:

- ♦ [Section 9.1, “Setting Up Closest Server Rules,” on page 91](#)
- ♦ [Section 9.2, “Scheduling Delivery Blackout Dates,” on page 102](#)
- ♦ [Section 9.3, “Setting the Device Refresh Schedule,” on page 103](#)

9.1 Setting Up Closest Server Rules

When you have multiple content servers, you can use the Closest Server rules to determine which content server a managed device uses to download content. The Closest Server rules let you map devices to content servers based on network addresses (DNS names and IP addresses).

For example, you can create a rule that maps all devices to ContentServer1 that fall within the IP address range of 123.45.67.1 to 123.45.67.100.

The following sections provide information and instructions for setting up Closest Server rules:

- ♦ [Section 9.1.1, “Understanding Closest Server Rules,” on page 91](#)
- ♦ [Section 9.1.2, “Configuring the Closest Server Default Rule,” on page 93](#)
- ♦ [Section 9.1.3, “Creating Closest Server Rules,” on page 97](#)

9.1.1 Understanding Closest Server Rules

When your ZENworks Management Zone includes more than one server (Primary Servers and Satellites), devices need to know which server to contact. The Closest Server Rules panel lets you create rules that are used to determine which servers a device contacts for the collection, content, and configuration functions.

With respect to Closest Server rules, devices that are configured as Satellites are considered as servers and can be listed for selection in the *Collection Servers* and *Content Servers* lists.

The following sections provide information you should understand before you start creating Closest Server rules:

- ♦ [“Collection, Content, and Configuration Servers” on page 92](#)
- ♦ [“Mapping Devices to Collection, Content, and Configuration Servers” on page 92](#)
- ♦ [“Effective Rules” on page 92](#)

Collection, Content, and Configuration Servers

There are three basic functions for which devices contact a server:

- ♦ **Collection:** Inventory and message log information is collected from each device, to be viewed in ZENworks Control Center and output to reports. Each ZENworks Primary Server and any Satellite can act as a collection server.
- ♦ **Content:** Content is provided to the managed devices. Each ZENworks Primary Server and any Satellite can act as a content server.
- ♦ **Configuration:** Configuration settings and registration information are applied to devices. Only ZENworks Primary Servers can act as a configuration server.

A device can contact the same server for all three functions, or it can contact different servers for each function.

Mapping Devices to Collection, Content, and Configuration Servers

A Closest Server rule maps devices with specific network addresses to three lists: a *Collection Server* list, a *Content Server* list, and a *Configuration Server* list.

For example, assume that you want to create a rule for devices that fall within the IP address range of 123.45.678.1 to 123.45.678.100. You specify the IP address range, then create the following three lists:

Collection Server List	Content Server List	Configuration Server List
Server 1	Server 3	Server 1
Server 2	Server 1	Server 3
Server 3		Server 2

Based on the three lists, any device whose IP address falls within the range will contact Server 1 for collection, Server 3 for content, and Server 1 for configuration. If any of these servers are unavailable, the device contacts the next server in the list.

Effective Rules

You can configure Closest Server rules at three levels:

- ♦ **Management Zone:** The rules are inherited by all device folders and devices.
- ♦ **Device Folder:** The rules are inherited by all devices contained within the folder or its subfolders. Overrides the Management Zone settings.
- ♦ **Device:** The rules apply only to the device for which they are configured. Overrides the settings set at the Management Zone and folder levels.

Each device can have only one Closest Server rule applied to it. A device's effective rule is determined as follows:

1. **Device Settings:** Evaluate all rules that are set on the device. If the device meets a rule's criteria, that rule becomes the device's effective rule.

2. **Folder settings:** If no device rule applies, evaluate all rules that are set on the device's parent folder. If the device meets a rule's criteria, that rule becomes the device's effective rule. If not, evaluate the rules on the next folder up in the hierarchy.
3. **Management Zone:** If no folder rule applies, evaluate all rules that are set in the Management Zone. If the device meets a rule's criteria, that rule becomes the device's effective rule. If not, apply the **default rule** to the device.
4. **Default Rule:** If no device, folder, or Management Zone rule applies, apply the default rule to the device. The default rule is simply a listing of all content servers in the order you want devices to contact them.

9.1.2 Configuring the Closest Server Default Rule

The Closest Server Default rule lets you define the rule that is used by a device to determine the closest collection, content, and configuration servers when no Closest Server rules have been defined or when none apply. This rule is simply a listing of the servers in the order you want devices to contact them. You cannot add or remove servers from the lists.

For Closest Server Default rules, devices that are Satellites are considered as servers and can be listed for selection in the *Collection Servers* and *Content Servers* lists.

By default, all ZENworks Servers function as collection, content, and configuration servers and are displayed in the Collection Servers, Content Servers, and Configuration Servers lists. In addition, any devices that are defined with the Content or Imaging roles are also displayed in the Content Servers list, and any devices that are defined with the Collection role are also displayed in the Collection Servers list.

To configure a Closest Server Default rule:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab, then click *Infrastructure Management* (in the Management Zone Settings panel) > *Closest Server Default Rule*.

[Configuration](#) > Closest Server Default Rule

Closest Server Default Rule

Configure the setting for how managed devices determine their closest server using the default rule.

Collection Servers:

Move Up Move Down Groups L4 Switch

Name
<input type="checkbox"/> /Devices/Servers/msorensen5

Content Servers:

Move Up Move Down Groups L4 Switch

Name
<input type="checkbox"/> /Devices/Servers/msorensen5

Configuration Servers:

Move Up Move Down Groups L4 Switch

Name
<input type="checkbox"/> /Devices/Servers/msorensen5

OK Apply Reset Cancel

The Content Servers section includes all ZENworks Primary Servers and Satellites with the content role in your zone. You cannot add or remove servers from the list. However, you can reorder the list to reflect the order in which you want the servers contacted by devices.

- 2** To configure the servers listed in the *Content Servers* section, do any of the following:

Task	Steps	Additional Details
Copy an existing group	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, click <i>Groups > Copy Existing Group</i>. 2. Select a group from the drop-down list, then click <i>OK</i>. 3. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>When you copy an existing group, it retains its group name and some of its members.</p> <p>For a member to be retained in the copied group, it must already have the role assigned to it that matches the role for the copied group's new section.</p>
Create an empty group	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, click <i>Groups > Create Empty Group</i>. You can add members to it later by using the <i>Groups > Add to Group</i> option. 2. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	The created group displays only in the role section where it is created.
Create a group from the selected servers	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more servers. 2. Click <i>Groups > Create Group from Selection</i>. 3. Specify a group name, then click <i>OK</i>. 4. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>Servers can be members of multiple groups and L4 switch definitions.</p> <p>Servers that are members of a group or L4 switch definition are no longer listed at the top level of the server listing.</p>
Remove a group	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more groups. 2. Click <i>Groups > Remove Group</i>, then click <i>OK</i>. 3. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	When you remove a group, servers that were previously added to a role section's listing are retained. This is automatically done by moving members that are not members of another group or L4 switch definition in the role section listing to the top level of the listing.

Task	Steps	Additional Details
Add servers to a group	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more servers. 2. Click <i>Groups > Add to Group</i>. 3. Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ To add the selected servers to a new group, select <i>Create New</i> and specify a group name, then click <i>OK</i>. ♦ To add the selected servers to an existing group, select a group from the drop-down list in the <i>Select Existing</i> field, then click <i>OK</i>. 4. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>Servers can be members of multiple groups and L4 switch definitions.</p> <p>Servers that are members of a group are no longer listed at the top level of the server listing.</p>
Remove servers from a group	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more servers that are listed under the group. 2. Click <i>Groups > Remove from Group</i>, then click <i>OK</i>. 3. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>In order to retain servers that were previously added to a role section's listing, this places the removed servers back at the top level of the listing, unless they are a member of another group or L4 switch definition in that listing.</p>
Create an empty L4 switch definition	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, click <i>L4 Switch > Create Empty L4 Switch Definition</i>. 2. Specify an L4 switch definition name, then click <i>OK</i>. <hr/> <p>IMPORTANT: The L4 switch definition name must be either the DNS name or IP address of the L4 switch itself.</p> <hr/> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>The L4 switch definition is displayed in each of the three listings, no matter where it is created.</p>

Task	Steps	Additional Details
Create an L4 switch definition from selected servers	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more servers. 2. Click <i>L4 Switch > Create L4 Switch Definition from Selection</i>. 3. Specify an L4 switch definition name, then click <i>OK</i>. <hr/> <p>IMPORTANT: The L4 switch definition name must be either the DNS name or IP address of the L4 switch itself.</p> <hr/> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>The created L4 switch definition is displayed in each of the listings, no matter where it is created, with the selected servers listed under each instance of the L4 switch definition.</p> <p>Servers can be members of multiple groups and L4 switch definitions.</p> <hr/> <p>Servers that are members of an L4 switch definition or group are no longer listed at the top level of the server listing.</p>
Remove an L4 switch definition	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, click <i>L4 Switch > Remove L4 Switch Definition</i>, then click <i>OK</i>. 2. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>Removing an L4 switch definition from one role section removes it from the other two role sections.</p> <p>When you remove an L4 switch definition, servers that were previously added to a role section's listing are retained. This is automatically done by moving members that are not members of another group or L4 switch definition in the role section listing to the top level of the listing.</p>

Task	Steps	Additional Details
Add servers to an L4 switch definition	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more servers. 2. Click <i>L4 Switch > Add to L4 Switch Definition</i>. 3. Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ To add the selected servers to a new L4 switch definition, select <i>Create New</i> and specify an L4 switch definition name, then click <i>OK</i>. 	<p>Servers can be members of multiple groups and L4 switch definitions.</p> <p>Servers that are members of an L4 switch definition are no longer listed at the top level of the server listing.</p>
	<p>IMPORTANT: The L4 switch definition name must be either the DNS name or IP address of the L4 switch itself.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ To add the selected servers to an existing L4 switch definition, select an L4 switch definition from the drop-down list in the <i>Select Existing</i> field, then click <i>OK</i>. 	
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	
Remove servers from an L4 switch definition	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more servers that are listed under the L4 switch definition. 2. Click <i>L4 Switch > Remove from L4 Switch Definition</i>, then click <i>OK</i>. 3. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>In order to retain servers that were previously added to a role section's listing, this places the removed servers back at the top level of the listing, unless they are a member of another group or L4 switch definition in that listing.</p>

3 Use the *Move Up* and *Move Down* buttons to determine the order devices should use to contact the servers for their content.

4 When you are finished reordering the servers, click *OK* or *Apply* to save the changes.

9.1.3 Creating Closest Server Rules

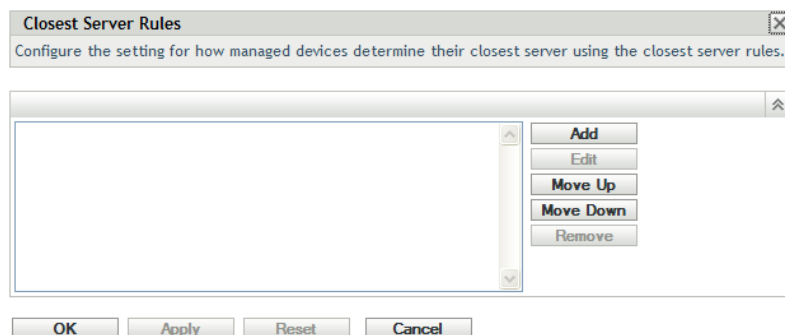
1 Launch ZENworks Control Center.

2 Do one of the following:

- ♦ To create a Closest Server rule for your Management Zone, click the *Configuration* tab, then click *Infrastructure Management* (in the Management Zone Settings panel) > *Closest Server Rules*.

- ♦ To create a Closest Server rule for a device folder, open the folder's details page, then click *Settings > Infrastructure Management* (in the Settings panel) > *Closest Server Rules*.
- ♦ To create a Closest Server rule for a device, open the device's details page, then click *Settings > Infrastructure Management* (in the Settings panel) > *Closest Server Rules*.

[Configuration](#) > Closest Server Rules



The dialog box titled "Closest Server Rules" has a close button (X) in the top right corner. Below the title bar, it says "Configure the setting for how managed devices determine their closest server using the closest server rules." The main area contains a large empty list box with a vertical scrollbar. To the right of the list box are five buttons: "Add", "Edit", "Move Up", "Move Down", and "Remove". At the bottom of the dialog are four buttons: "OK", "Apply", "Reset", and "Cancel".

- 3 If you are creating Closest Server rules on a device or device folder, click *Override settings* to activate the Closest Server Rules panel.

The *Override* option (not depicted) displays only at the device and device folder levels.

- 4 Click *Add* to display the Rule Construction dialog box:



The "Rule Construction" dialog box has a title bar with a help icon (?) and a close button (X). It contains the following fields and controls:

- Rule Name:** A text input field with an asterisk (*) indicating it is required.
- Exclude the Closest Server Default Rule:** A checkbox.
- Rule Logic:** A section with a blue bar containing "Add Filter", "Insert Filter", and "Delete". Below this is a checkbox and a dropdown menu with "--Select--".
- Collection Servers:** A section with a blue bar containing "Move Up", "Move Down", "Add", "Remove", "Groups", and "L4 Switch". Below this is a text input field labeled "Name".
- Content Servers:** A section with a blue bar containing "Move Up", "Move Down", "Add", "Remove", "Groups", and "L4 Switch". Below this is a text input field labeled "Name".
- Configuration Servers:** A section with a blue bar containing "Move Up", "Move Down", "Add", "Remove", "Groups", and "L4 Switch". Below this is a text input field labeled "Name".

At the bottom, it says "Fields marked with an asterisk are required." and has "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

- 5 In the *Rule Name* field, specify a name for the rule.

The name displays in the Closest Server Rules listing in ZENworks Control Center. To access this listing, click *Configuration* in the left pane, click the *Configuration* tab, click the *Management Zone Settings* panel to open it, click *Infrastructure Management* section to open it, then click *Closest Server Rules*. All defined rules for the current level are displayed there.

- 6 If you do not want to append the Closest Server Default rule to the servers you are listing in this Closest Server rule, select the *Exclude the Closest Server Default Rule* check box.

The Closest Server rules feature first uses the servers specified in the rule, then proceeds to any other servers listed in the Closest Server Default rule if the specified servers are not available to the managed device. Therefore, to obtain content only from the servers specified in the rule, select this check box to exclude all other servers.

- 7 Using the *Rule Logic* fields, create the rule expression.

An expression consists of a criteria option, operator, and value. For example:

DNS Name Filter equal to *.novell.com

DNS Name Filter is the criteria option, equal to is the operator, and *.novell.com is the value. In the above example, the Closest Server rule is applied only to devices whose DNS name ends with .novell.com.

If necessary, you can use NOT to perform a logical negation of the expression. For example:

NOT DNS Name Filter equal to *.novell.com

In the above example, the Closest Server rule is applied only to devices whose DNS name does not end with .novell.com.

You can use more than one expression for the rule. For example:

DNS Name Filter equal to provo.novell.com or IP Address equal to 123.45.678.12/24

You can use the following criteria:

Option	Explanation
DNS Name Filter	<p>Matches DNS names that meet the filter criteria. You can specify an exact filter or use a question mark (?) or an asterisk (*) as a wildcard to match one or more characters in the DNS name. A ? matches one character and an * matches one or more characters. Examples:</p> <p>provo.novell.com: Matches all devices in the provo subdomain of the novell.com top-level domain.</p> <p>*.novell.com: Matches all devices in the novell.com top-level domain, including any devices in subdomains.</p> <p>provo?.novell.com: Matches all devices in the provo1 and provo 2 subdomains of the novell.com top-level domain; does not match devices in the provo12 subdomain.</p>
IP Address /n	<p>Matches IP addresses that fall within the specified CIDR (Classless Inter-Domain Routing) block. With CIDR, the dotted decimal portion of the IP address is interpreted as a 32-bit binary number that has been broken into four 8-bit bytes. The number following the slash (/n) is the prefix length, which is the number of shared initial bits, counting from the left side of the address. The /n number can range from 0 to 32, with 8, 16, 24, and 32 being commonly used numbers. Examples:</p> <p>123.45.678.12/16: Matches all IP addresses that start with 123.45.</p> <p>123.45.678.12/24: Matches all IP addresses that start with 123.45.678.</p>

8 To configure the servers listed in the *Content Servers* section, do any of the following:

Task	Steps	Additional Details
Add members to a servers list	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, click <i>Add</i>. 2. Browse for and select one or more servers. You can add Primary Servers and Satellites. 3. Click <i>OK</i> to add the selected servers to the list. 	<p>The selected servers are added only into the list where you clicked <i>Add</i>. You can have different servers in each list.</p> <p>Primary Servers and Satellites with the assigned role are automatically included in the lists for the Closest Server Default rule.</p>
Reorder the servers	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check box for one of the servers. 2. Click <i>Move Up</i> or <i>Move Down</i> as necessary to change its order in the list. 3. Repeat as necessary for the other servers listed. 	<p>Determines the order devices should use to contact the servers for collection, content, and configuration purposes.</p> <p>You can order the servers differently in the lists. This allows you to spread the collection, content, and configuration workload by placing different servers higher in one list than in the other two lists. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Collection Servers: Server1, Server2, Server3 ♦ Content Servers: Server2, Server3, Server1 ♦ Configuration Servers: Server3, Server1, Server2
Copy an existing group	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, click <i>Groups > Copy Existing Group</i>. 2. Select a group from the drop-down list, then click <i>OK</i>. 3. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>When you copy an existing group, it retains its group name and some of its members.</p> <p>For a member to be retained in the copied group, it must already have the role assigned to it that matches the role for the copied group's new section.</p>
Create an empty group	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, click <i>Groups > Create Empty Group</i>. You can add members to it later by using the <i>Groups > Add to Group</i> option. 2. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>The created group displays only in the role section where it is created.</p>

Task	Steps	Additional Details
Create a group from the selected servers	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more servers. 2. Click <i>Groups > Create Group from Selection</i>. 3. Specify a group name, then click <i>OK</i>. 4. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>Servers can be members of multiple groups and L4 switch definitions.</p> <p>Servers that are members of a group or L4 switch definition are no longer listed at the top level of the server listing.</p>
Remove a group	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more groups. 2. Click <i>Groups > Remove Group</i>, then click <i>OK</i>. 3. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>When you remove a group, servers that were previously added to a role section's listing are retained. This is automatically done by moving members that are not members of another group or L4 switch definition in the role section listing to the top level of the listing.</p>
Add servers to a group	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more servers. 2. Click <i>Groups > Add to Group</i>. 3. Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ To add the selected servers to a new group, select <i>Create New</i> and specify a group name, then click <i>OK</i>. ♦ To add the selected servers to an existing group, select a group from the drop-down list in the <i>Select Existing</i> field, then click <i>OK</i>. 4. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>Servers can be members of multiple groups and L4 switch definitions.</p> <p>Servers that are members of a group are no longer listed at the top level of the server listing.</p>
Remove servers from a group	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, select the check boxes for one or more servers that are listed under the group. 2. Click <i>Groups > Remove from Group</i>, then click <i>OK</i>. 3. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>In order to retain servers that were previously added to a role section's listing, this places the removed servers back at the top level of the listing, unless they are a member of another group or L4 switch definition in that listing.</p>
Create an L4 switch definition		<p>This option is not used in the Rule Construction dialog box.</p>

Task	Steps	Additional Details
Remove an L4 switch	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, click <i>L4 Switch > Remove L4 Switch</i>, then click <i>OK</i>. 2. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>Removing an L4 switch definition from one role section removes it from the other two role sections on the dialog box.</p> <p>Removing an L4 switch definition in the Rule Construction dialog box does not remove the definition from the Closest Servers Default Rule page.</p> <p>When you remove an L4 switch definition, servers that were previously added to a role section's listing are retained. This is automatically done by moving members that are not members of another group or L4 switch definition in the role section listing to the top level of the listing.</p>
Add an L4 switch	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In one of the role section listings, click <i>L4 Switch > Add L4 Switch</i>, select an existing switch from the drop-down list, then click <i>OK</i>. 2. Click <i>Apply</i> to make the change effective. 	<p>Allows you to select an existing L4 switch definition from those displayed on the Closest Server Default Rule page.</p>

- 9** Use the *Move Up* and *Move Down* buttons to determine the order devices should use to contact the servers for their content.

The order in which the ZENworks Servers are listed is the order in which a device contacts them. If the first ZENworks Server is not available, the second server is contacted, and so on.

- 10** When you are finished, click *OK* to add the rule to the *Closest Server Rules* list.
- 11** Repeat **Step 2** through **Step 10** to create additional rules.
- 12** If necessary, when you are finished creating rules, use the *Move Up* and *Move Down* buttons to reorder the rules in the *Closest Server Rules* list.

The rules are evaluated in the order they are listed. You should place the rules in the order you want them evaluated.

9.2 Scheduling Delivery Blackout Dates

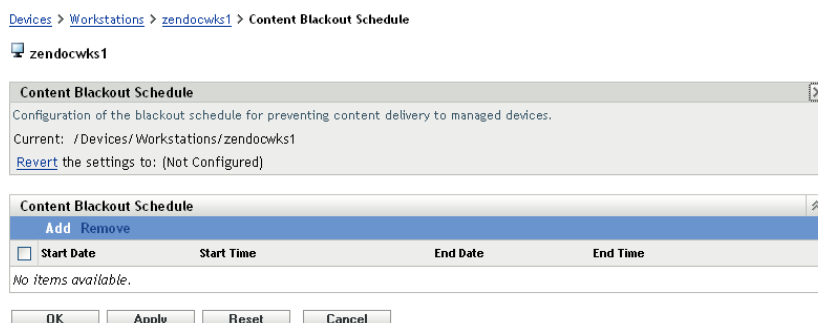
If there are times when you don't want managed devices to download content, you can create a content blackout schedule. Schedules can be defined at the following levels:

- ♦ **Management Zone:** The schedule is inherited by all devices.
- ♦ **Device Folder:** The schedule is inherited by all devices within the folder and its subfolders. Overrides the Management Zone blackout schedule.
- ♦ **Device:** The schedule applies only to the device for which it is defined. Overrides any schedules set at the Management Zone and folder levels.

A blackout schedule can include one or more time periods.

To create a content blackout schedule:

- 1 Launch ZENworks Control Center.
- 2 Do one of the following:
 - ♦ To create a content blackout schedule for your Management Zone, click the *Configuration* tab, then click *Content* (in the Management Zone Settings panel) > *Content Blackout Schedule*.
 - ♦ To create a content blackout schedule for a device folder, open the folder's details page, click *Settings* > *Content* (in the Settings panel) > *Content Blackout Schedule*.
 - ♦ To create a content blackout schedule for a device, open the device's details page, click *Settings* > *Content* (in the Settings panel) > *Content Blackout Schedule*.



- 3 If you are creating content blackout schedules for a device or device folder, click *Override settings* to activate the Content Blackout Schedule panel.
- 4 Click *Add* to display the Specify Blackout Time Period dialog box, then fill in the following fields:
 - Start Date:** Select the first date you want to include in the schedule.
 - End Date:** Select the last date you want to include in the schedule. The blackout time period (specified by the start and end times) occurs on each day from the start date to the end date.
 - Start Time:** Select the hour you want the blackout time period to start each day.
 - End Time:** Select the hour you want the blackout time period to end each day. If you want the blackout time period to extend for 24 hours, select the same time as the start time.
- 5 Click *OK* to save the blackout period.
- 6 Repeat **Step 4** to create additional blackout periods.
- 7 When you are finished, click *OK* or *Apply* to save the schedule.

9.3 Setting the Device Refresh Schedule

At device startup, the ZENworks Adaptive Agent on a device contacts a ZENworks Server to refresh its information. If information changes after startup, the Adaptive Agent must refresh its information again before the changes can show up on the device.

If the refreshed information indicates that there is new content to be downloaded, the Adaptive Agent contacts its content server and begins the download process.

You can use the device refresh schedule to determine how often a device contacts a ZENworks Server to update bundle, policy, configuration, and registration information. Schedules can be defined at the following levels:

- ♦ **Management Zone:** The schedule is inherited by all devices.
- ♦ **Device Folder:** The schedule is inherited by all devices within the folder and its subfolders. Overrides the Management Zone schedule.
- ♦ **Device:** The schedule applies only to the device for which it is defined. Overrides any schedules set at the Management Zone and folder levels.

To create a device refresh schedule:

1 Launch ZENworks Control Center.

2 Do one of the following:

- ♦ To create a device refresh schedule for your Management Zone, click the *Configuration* tab, then click *Device Management* (in the Management Zone Settings panel) > *Device Refresh Schedule*.
- ♦ To create a device refresh schedule for a device folder, open the folder's details page, then click *Settings* > *Device Management* (in the Settings panel) > *Device Refresh Schedule*.
- ♦ To create a device refresh schedule for a device, open the device's details page, then click *Settings* > *Content* (in the Settings panel) > *Device Refresh Schedule*.

[Devices](#) > [Workstations](#) > [zendocwks1](#) > [Device Refresh Schedule](#)

zendocwks1

Device Refresh Schedule

Configure the refresh interval for this device.
Current: / Devices/Workstations/zendocwks1
[Revert](#) the settings to: (System)

Device Refresh Schedule

☐ Manual Refresh
Device won't get refreshed until the user manually does so

☒ Timed Refresh

Full Refresh Schedule
Refresh everything: Policies, Bundles, Settings, Registration, etc.

0 Days 12 Hours 0 Minutes

☒ Random Time to Wait
Minimum: 300 Seconds Maximum: 360 Seconds

Partial Refresh Schedule
Only perform Policies, Settings, and Registration refresh

0 Days 2 Hours 0 Minutes

OK Apply Reset Cancel

3 If you are creating a device refresh schedule for a device or device folder, click *Override settings* to activate the Device Refresh Schedule panel, then choose from the following schedules:

Manual Refresh: If you want a device refreshed only when its user manually initiates the refresh, select *Manual Refresh*, then click *Apply*. Users can initiate a refresh by clicking the ZENworks icon located in the desktop's notification area (system tray).

Timed Refresh: Select *Timed Refresh* if you want to establish a refresh schedule. You can use a Full Refresh Schedule or a Partial Refresh Schedule:

- ♦ **Full Refresh Schedule:** Defines how often you want a device to update all of its information from the ZENworks Server, including bundle, policy, setting, and registration information. Use the following fields to create the full refresh schedule:
 - ♦ **Days, Hours, Minutes:** Specifies the amount of time between refreshes. For example, to set a refresh interval of 8.5 hours, you would specify 0 Days, 8 Hours, 30 Minutes. The default is 12 hours.
 - ♦ **Random Time to Wait:** Select this option to ensure that multiple devices that have the same refresh schedule do not all initiate their refresh at the same time. For example, if you have 1000 devices with the same refresh schedule, you might overburden your ZENworks Server. By selecting this option, the device waits a randomly generated amount of time before initiating its refresh. Use the *Minimum* and *Maximum* fields to specify the range (in seconds) for the randomly generated time.
- ♦ **Partial Refresh Schedule:** Defines how often you want a device to update its policy, configuration setting, and registration information from the ZENworks Server. Bundle information is not updated.

In the *Days*, *Hours*, and *Minutes* fields, specify the amount of time between refreshes. For example, to set a refresh interval of 3 hours, you would specify 0 Days, 3 Hours, 0 Minutes. The default is 2 hours.

The refresh interval is not reset until the device refresh is complete. For example, assume you set a refresh interval of 8 hours. The device's first refresh occurs at 6:00 p.m. and takes 13 seconds to complete. The second refresh occurs at 2:00:13 a.m. (8 hours after the refresh was completed at 6:00:13). If the second refresh takes 15 seconds to complete, the third refresh occurs at 10:00:28 a.m.

- 4 When you are finished, click *OK* or *Apply* to save the schedule.

Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management enables you to assign content to users as well as devices. Device-assigned content is available whenever the device is running and connected to the network; user-assigned content is available only when the user is logged in to the Management Zone. For example, if you assign a bundle to a user, the bundle is available only after the user logs in.

Unlike devices, users are not defined in your Management Zone. Instead, you connect to the LDAP directory that you want to use as your authoritative user source. If necessary, you can connect to multiple directories.

The following sections provide instructions to define user sources:

- ♦ [Section 10.1, “Prerequisites,” on page 107](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.2, “Adding a User Source,” on page 107](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.3, “Deleting a User Source,” on page 110](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.4, “Adding a Container from a User Source,” on page 111](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.5, “Providing LDAP Load Balancing and Fault Tolerance,” on page 111](#)

10.1 Prerequisites

- ❑ **Minimum directory version:** Novell eDirectory™ 8.7.3 or Microsoft Active Directory* on Windows 2000 SP4.
- ❑ **Minimum LDAP version:** LDAPv3
- ❑ **Minimum user account rights:** Read rights.

For Active Directory, you can use a basic user account. This provides sufficient read access to the directory.

For eDirectory, you need inheritable read rights to the following attributes: CN, O, OU, C, DC, GUID, WM:NAME DNS, and Object Class. You can assign the rights at the directory’s root context or at another context you designate as the ZENworks root context.

The username and password used to access the user source directory are stored in clear-text format on the ZENworks Primary servers in the `iaRealm.xml` file. If security is a concern, ensure that you limit access to the directory.

- ❑ **DNS name resolution:** With Active Directory, your ZENworks Servers (in particular, the DNS clients on the ZENworks Server) must be able to resolve the DNS name of each Active Directory domain defined as a user source. Otherwise, users from the Active Directory domain cannot log in to the ZENworks Management Zone.

10.2 Adding a User Source

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.

Configuration	Registration	System Information	Asset Inventory	System Updates	Asset Management
Management Zone Settings					
Server Hierarchy					
Administrators					
User Sources					
New Delete					
<input type="checkbox"/> Status Name					
No items available.					
Licenses					

2 In the User Sources panel, click *New* to launch the Create New User Source Wizard.

[User Sources](#) > **New User Source**

Create New User Source

Step 1: Connection Information

Configuring a user source, allows Bundle and Policy objects to be assigned to identities contained in an LDAP directory. Please enter the connection information for the LDAP directory.

Address:

☒ Use SSL


Port:

Root LDAP Context: (optional)
(e.g. dc=company,dc=com)

3 Follow the prompts to create the connection to the user source.

For information about each of the wizard pages, click the *Help* button or refer to the following table:

Wizard Page	Details
Connection Information page	<p>Specify the information required to create a connection to the LDAP directory:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Address: Specify the IP address or DNS hostname of the server where the LDAP directory resides.♦ Use SSL: By default, this option is enabled. Disable the option if the LDAP server is not using the SSL (Secure Socket Layer) protocol.♦ Port: This field defaults to the standard SSL port (636) or non-SSL port (389) depending on whether the <i>Use SSL</i> option is enabled or disabled. If your LDAP server is listening on a different port, select that port number.♦ Root Context: The root context establishes the point in the directory where you can begin to browse for user containers. Specifying a root context can enable you to browse less of the directory, but it is optional. If you don't specify a root context, the directory's root container becomes the entry point.
Credentials page	<p>Specify a username and password for accessing the directory:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Username: Specify the username for a user that has read-only access to the directory. The user can have more than read-only access, but read-only access is all that is required and recommended. <p>For Novell eDirectory access, use standard LDAP notation. For example:</p> <pre>cn=admin_read_only,ou=users,o=mycompany</pre> <p>For Microsoft Active Directory, use standard domain notation. For example:</p> <pre>AdminReadOnly@mycompany.com</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Password: Specify the password for the user you specified in the <i>Username</i> field.

Wizard Page	Details
User Containers page	<p>After you connect to an LDAP directory as a user source, you can define the containers within the directory that you want exposed. The number of user containers you define is determined by how much of the directory you want to expose. Consider the following example:</p> <pre> graph LR MyCompany --> EMEA MyCompany --> ASIAPAC MyCompany --> AMERICAS EMEA --> Accounting EMEA --> Sales EMEA --> Servers EMEA --> Services EMEA --> Groups Accounting --> Users Accounting --> Groups Sales --> Users Sales --> Groups </pre> <p>Assume you want to enable all users in the Accounting and Sales containers to receive ZENworks content. In addition, you want to be able to access the user groups located in the Accounting, Sales, and Groups containers in order to distribute content based on those groups. To gain access to the users and groups, you have two options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ You can add MyCompany/EMEA as a user container, so all containers located below EMEA are visible in ZENworks Control Center, including the Servers and Services containers. Only users and user groups located in the EMEA containers are visible (servers and services are not), but the structure is still exposed. ♦ You can add MyCompany/EMEA/Accounting as one user container, MyCompany/EMEA/Sales as a second container, and MyCompany/EMEA/Groups as a third container. Only these containers become visible as folders beneath the MyCompany directory reference in ZENworks Control Center. <p>To add the containers where users reside:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click <i>Add</i> to display the Add User Container dialog box. 2. In the <i>Context</i> field, click  to browse for and select the desired container. 3. In the <i>Display Name</i> field, specify the name you want used for the user container when it is displayed in ZENworks Control Center. 4. Click <i>OK</i> to add the container to the list.

10.3 Deleting a User Source

When you delete a source, all assignments and messages for the source's users are removed. You cannot undo a source deletion.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.

- 2 In the User Sources panel, select the check box next to the user source, then click *Delete*.
- 3 Click *OK* to confirm the deletion.

10.4 Adding a Container from a User Source

After you've defined a user source in your Management Zone, you can add containers from that source at any time.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the User Sources panel, click the user source.

Configuration > ZENSM1

ZENSM1

Settings

General

Name: ZENSM1

Directory Type: eDirectory

Communication Status:

Connection Details: [\(Edit\)](#) Address: 123.65.123.65
Port: 389
Use SSL: No

Username and Password: [\(Edit\)](#) cn=admin,ou=servers,o=novell

Root Context: [\(Edit\)](#)

Description: [\(Edit\)](#)

User Containers

[Add](#) [Replace](#) [Remove](#) [Rename](#)

<input type="checkbox"/> Context	Name
<input type="checkbox"/> /ZENSM1/Novell/Users	Novell Users

- 3 In the User Containers panel, click *Add* to display the Add User Container dialog box, then fill in the following fields:

Context: Click to browse for and select the container you want to add.

Display Name: Specify the name you want used for the user container when it is displayed in ZENworks Control Center. The name cannot be the same as the name of any other user containers.

- 4 Click *OK* to add the user container.

The container, and its users and user groups, is now available on the *Users* page.

10.5 Providing LDAP Load Balancing and Fault Tolerance

Multiple LDAP servers can be configured for a single directory. The directory could be Active Directory or eDirectory. Multiple LDAP servers allow for load balancing and fault tolerance.

NOTE: This file can be found at the following locations:

/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel/authsource/alt-servers.properties.sample

c:\program files\novell\zenworks\conf\datamodel\authsource\alt-servers.properties.sample

The following sample file explains how to accomplish this.

```
# Sample alt-servers.properties file.
#
# The alt-servers.properties file allows you to configure how this server will
connect to a particular user source.
# When connecting to a LDAP user source, ZENworks will try to connect to the
servers in the order listed in this file.
# This allows for fail-over to other LDAP servers and for load distribution, if
different ZENworks Primary Servers are
# configured with the server addresses in a different order.
#
# * The [user-source-name] must exactly match how the user source name appears on
the configuration page in ZCC.
# * You must specify the LDAP port along with each server address.
# * SSL is configured for the entire user source, not for each individual server.
You must specify either the
#   SSL port or the clear text port for all servers, depending on how the user
source is configured in ZCC.
# * If the server-list.properties file contains an entry for a user source,
ZENworks will not try to connect to the
#   server address configured in ZCC. It only tries the addresses listed in the
properties file.
# * If you create or modify the server-list.properties file, you will need to
restart the Novell ZENworks Server and
#   Novell ZENworks Loader services for it to take effect.
# * Performance will be impacted if one or more of the servers at the top of the
list are down, as ZENworks attempts to
#   connect to the servers in order. This is particularly true of the CASA
authentication token service, which is
#   contacted when a user tries to log in to ZENworks on a workstation.
#
# Format:
#
# [user-source-name]=\
#   [host1]:[port] \
#   [host2]:[port] \
#   [host3]:[port]
#
# Example:
#
MY_EDIR_TREE=\
  edir1.novell.com:636 \
  edir2.novell.com:636 \
  edir3.novell.com:636 \
  edir4.novell.com:636
```


The following sections provide information about authentication of users to a ZENworks® Management Zone.

- ♦ [Section 11.1, “User Source Authentication,” on page 113](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.2, “Credential Storage,” on page 113](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.3, “Disabling ZENworks User Authentication,” on page 114](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.4, “Troubleshooting User Authentication,” on page 114](#)

11.1 User Source Authentication

By default, a user is automatically authenticated to the Management Zone when he or she logs in to an LDAP directory (Novell® eDirectory™ or Microsoft* Active Directory) that has been defined as a user source in the Management Zone. User authentication to ZENworks can occur only if the user's LDAP directory (or the user's LDAP directory context) is defined as a user source in ZENworks.

The ZENworks Adaptive Agent integrates with the Windows Login or Novell Login client to provide a single login experience for users. When users enter their eDirectory or Active Directory credentials in the Windows or Novell client, they are logged in to the Management Zone if the credentials match the ones in a ZENworks user source. Otherwise, a separate ZENworks login screen prompts the user for the correct credentials.

For example, assume that a user has accounts in two eDirectory trees: Tree1 and Tree2. Tree1 is defined as a user source in the Management Zone, but Tree2 is not. If the user logs in to Tree1, he or she is automatically logged in to the Management Zone. However, if the user logs in to Tree2, the Adaptive Agent login screen appears and prompts the user for the Tree1 credentials.

NOTE: Authentication using Biometric device or Smart Card is not yet supported.

11.2 Credential Storage

ZENworks uses Novell CASA (Common Authentication Services Adapter) to enable single sign-on. When the ZENworks Adaptive Agent authenticates a user to the Management Zone via the credentials entered in the Microsoft client, Novell client, or ZENworks login screen, the username and password is stored in the secure CASA vault on the user's device.

CASA is installed with the ZENworks Adaptive Agent. It includes the CASA Manager, an interface used to manage the credentials in the storage vault. The CASA Manager is available from the Start > Program Files > Novell CASA menu. Generally, you or the device's user should not need to use the CASA Manager. When a user's credentials change in their LDAP directory, they are updated in the CASA storage vault the next time the user logs in. If you do run the CASA Manager, you are prompted to install the GTK# Library. If you choose to install the library (which is necessary to run the CASA Manager), you are directed to a Novell Website from which you can install it.

Do not remove CASA from the managed device. If you do not want the CASA Manager displayed to users, you can remove the Novell CASA folder from the Start > Program Files menu.

11.3 Disabling ZENworks User Authentication

By default, if a user source is defined in the ZENworks Management Zone, the ZENworks Adaptive Agent attempts to authenticate a user to the zone whenever he or she logs in through the Microsoft or Novell client.

If necessary, you can disable user authentication to the zone. For example, you might have some users that only receive device-assigned content so you don't want the overhead of having them logged in to the zone.

To disable user authentication to the zone:

- 1 Locate the following key in the registry on the user's device:

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Novell\ZENworks\ZenLgn

- 2 (Conditional) If you want to disable login, add the following DWORD value:

Value name: DisablePassiveModeLogin

Value data: Any non-zero value (for example, 1, 2, 3, 100)

With login disabled, no attempt is made to authenticate to the Management Zone when the user logs in through the Microsoft or Novell client.

- 3 (Conditional) If you want to disable the ZENworks login prompt that appears if login through the Microsoft client or Novell client fails, add the following DWORD value:

Value name: DisablePassiveModeLoginPrompt

Value data: Any non-zero value (for example, 1, 2, 3, 100)

Normally, the Adaptive Agent attempts to authenticate the user to the zone by using the credentials entered in the Microsoft or Novell client. If login fails, the ZENworks login prompt is displayed in order to give the user an opportunity to authenticate with different credentials. This value setting disables the ZENworks login prompt.

11.4 Troubleshooting User Authentication

This section contains a detailed explanation of the problems you might encounter while authenticating to a ZENworks Management Zone.

- ♦ “Incorrect username displayed in the ZENworks Configuration Management login screen” on page 115
- ♦ “Unable to log in to the ZENworks Configuration Management server” on page 115
- ♦ “Large number of concurrent client logins might result in login failures” on page 115
- ♦ “Enabling debug logs on Windows 2003 and Windows XP devices” on page 116
- ♦ “Enabling debug logs on Windows Vista device” on page 116
- ♦ “Enabling CASA debug logs” on page 117
- ♦ “Logging in to the user source on ZENworks Configuration Management server might take some time” on page 117

Incorrect username displayed in the ZENworks Configuration Management login screen

- Explanation: The *Username* option in the ZENworks Login screen displays the Windows local username by default.
- Possible Cause: If you changed only the full name of the user (*My Computer > Manage > System Tools > Local Users and Groups > Full Name*), the ZENworks login screen displays the old username and not the new full name.
- Action: To change the local user account details, you must change both the username and the full name of the user:
- 1 Click the desktop *Start* menu > *Run*.
 - 2 In the Run window, specify *control userpasswords2*, then click *OK*.
 - 3 Double-click the username and edit both the *User Name* and *Full Name* of the user.
 - 4 Click *OK*.

Unable to log in to the ZENworks Configuration Management server

- Possible Cause: A user with an account in the eDirectory that is installed on an OES 2.0 server tries to log into a non-OES 2.0 ZENworks Configuration Management server.
- Action: To log in to a non-OES 2.0 ZENworks Configuration Management server, the user must be a Linux User Management (LUM) user. For more information on LUM users, see the *Novell Linux User Management Technology Guide* (http://www.novell.com/documentation/oes2/acc_linux_svcs_lx/index.html?page=/documentation/oes2/acc_linux_svcs_lx/data/fbdecbed.html)

Large number of concurrent client logins might result in login failures

- Explanation: The maximum number of concurrent client connections that a server can support depends on the configured `Connector acceptCount`. If the number of concurrent client requests exceeds the value of `Connector acceptCount`, the client connect requests might fail because the server is not able to accept these connections.
- Action: Increase the number of client connect requests that the server can support.

On a Windows server:

- 1 Log in as an administrator.
- 2 Open the `ZENworks_Install_path\share\ats\catalinabase\conf\server.xml` file.
- 3 In the `Define a SSL Coyote HTTP/1.1 Connector` on `port 2645` section, change the value of the `Connector acceptCount` to the desired value. A value of 300 is optimal.
- 4 Restart the Authentication Token Service:
 - 4a On the desktop, click *Start > Run*.
 - 4b In the Run window, specify *service.msc*, then click *OK*.
 - 4c Restart *CasaAuthTokenSvc*.

On a Linux server:

- 1 Log in as root.
- 2 Open the `/srv/www/casaats/conf/server.xml` file.
- 3 In the Define a SSL Coyote HTTP/1.1 Connector on port 2645 section, change the value of the Connector `acceptCount` to the desired value. A value of 300 is optimal.
- 4 Restart the Authentication Token Service:
 - 4a At the server prompt, go to `/etc/init.d/`.
 - 4b Run the `casa_atd restart` command.

Enabling debug logs on Windows 2003 and Windows XP devices

Action: Do the following to enable the NWGina log:

- 1 Open the Registry Editor.
- 2 Go to `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Novell\NWGina`.
- 3 Create a DWORD called `EnableDebugMessageLogging` and set the value to 1.
- 4 Create a DWORD called `MaxLogFileSize` and set the value to 100000.
- 5 Reboot the device.

The `C:\windows\system32\nwgina.log` file is created.

Action: Do the following to enable the Zenlgn log:

- 1 Open the Registry Editor.
- 2 Go to `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Novell\ZENworks\ZenLgn`.
- 3 Create a DWORD called `EnableDebugMessageLogging` and set the value to 1.
- 4 Reboot the device.

The `C:\windows\system32\zenlgn.log` file is created.

Enabling debug logs on Windows Vista device

Action: Do the following:

- 1 Open the Registry Editor.
- 2 Go to `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Novell\Authentication\Notify\ZenNotify`.
- 3 Create a DWORD called `Debug` and set the value to 00000003.
- 4 Reboot the device.

The `C:\windows\system32\ZenNotify.log` file is created.

Enabling CASA debug logs

Action Do the following:

On the managed device:

- 1 Open the `\program files\novell\casa\etc\auth\client.conf` file.
- 2 Modify `LogLevel` to 3.
- 3 Accept the default path to the file, or specify a different path.
By default, the `DebugLogFolderPath` is `c:\logfolder`. You can specify a different path. Ensure that the specified path exists on the device.
- 4 Reboot the device.

The `casaauthtoken.log` file is created in the path specified in [Step 3](#).

On the server:

- 1 Open the `log4j.properties` file.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** `C:\Program Files\Novell\ZENworks\share\ats\etc\svc\log4j.properties`.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** `etc/CASA/authtoken/svc/log4j.properties`.
- 2 Modify `log4j.rootLogger` to `warn`.
- 3 Restart the server.

The following log files are created:

- ♦ **On Windows:** `\Program Files\Novell\ZENworks\share\ats\catalinabase\logs\ats.log` and `\Program Files\Novell\ZENworks\share\ats\catalinabase\logs\ats.trace`
- ♦ **On Linux:** `/srv/www/casaats/logs/ats.log` and `/srv/www/casaats/logs/ats.trace`

Logging in to the user source on ZENworks Configuration Management server might take some time

Explanation: Logging in to the user source on ZENworks Configuration Management server from the managed device might take some time because the login process executes the device refresh synchronously.

Action: To speed up the login process, perform the following steps to change the login process to execute the device refresh asynchronously:

- 1 Open the Registry Editor.
- 2 Go to `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Novell\ZENworks`.

- 3 Create a String called `ZENLoginUserRefreshAsync` and set the value to `TRUE`.
- 4 Log in to the device again.

WARNING: If you change the login process to execute the device refresh asynchronously, the latest policies might not be immediately available. With this setting, the choice is login performance over the accuracy of the policies.

The Credential Vault stores the credentials used by Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management actions and tasks that require authentication to access a particular resource.

For example, if you want to create a third-party Imaging bundle by using the image files stored in a shared-network image repository that requires authentication, you can add a credential that includes the login name and password for the repository in the credential vault. During the creation of the third-party Imaging bundle, you can specify the credential name to access the repository.

You can use ZENworks Control Center or the zman command line utility to manage credentials. The following procedures in this section explain how to manage credentials by using ZENworks Control Center. If you prefer the zman command line utility, see “[Credential Commands](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

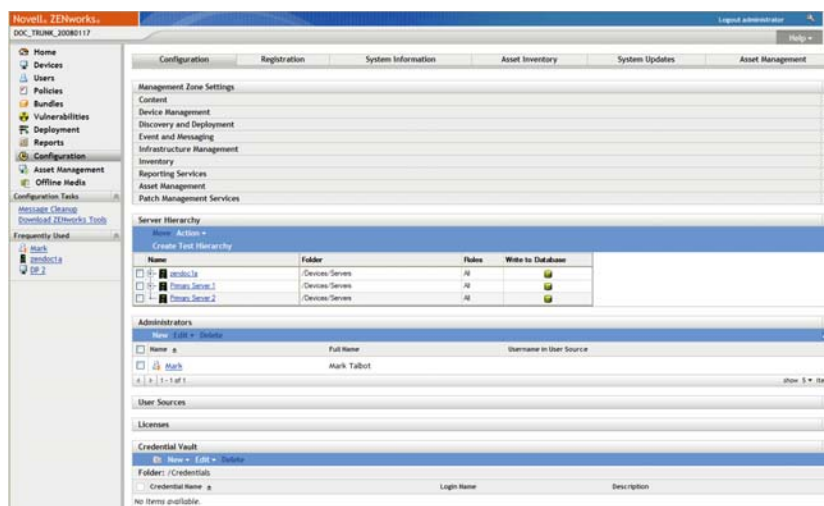
NOTE: Currently, third-party imaging uses credentials stored in the credential vault. In future releases, many features will use the credential vault, including bundles, deployment, discovery, and more.

The following sections contain information to help you manage credentials:

- ♦ [Section 12.1, “Adding a Credential,” on page 120](#)
- ♦ [Section 12.2, “Creating a Folder for Credentials,” on page 121](#)
- ♦ [Section 12.3, “Assigning Credential Rights,” on page 122](#)
- ♦ [Section 12.4, “Editing a Credential,” on page 122](#)
- ♦ [Section 12.5, “Renaming a Credential,” on page 122](#)
- ♦ [Section 12.6, “Copying a Credential,” on page 122](#)
- ♦ [Section 12.7, “Moving a Credential to Another Folder,” on page 123](#)
- ♦ [Section 12.8, “Removing a Credential,” on page 123](#)

12.1 Adding a Credential

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.



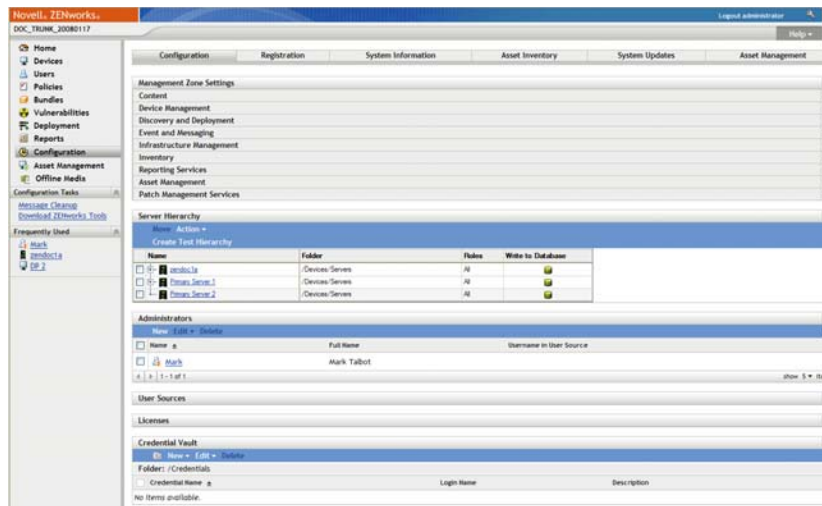
- 2 In the *Credential Vault* panel, click *New > Credential* to display the Add Credential dialog box.

The 'Add Credential' dialog box is shown. It has a title bar with a question mark icon and a close button. The dialog contains five text input fields: 'Credential Name:', 'Description:', 'Login Name:', 'Password:', and 'Reenter Password:'. The 'Credential Name' and 'Login Name' fields have an asterisk (*) next to them, indicating they are required. At the bottom of the dialog are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

- 3 Fill in the fields.
If you need help, click the *Help* button.


12.2 Creating a Folder for Credentials

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.



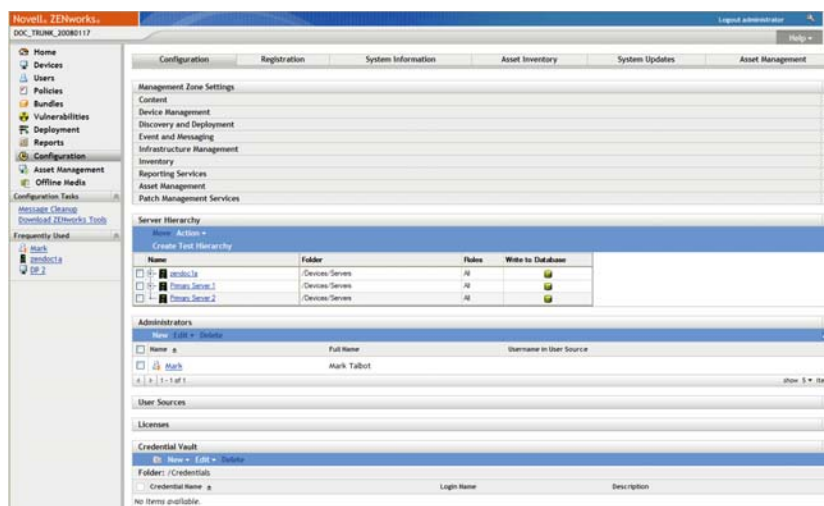
- 2 In the Credential Vault panel, click *New > Folder* to display the New Folder dialog box.

The 'New Folder' dialog box is shown. It has a title bar with a question mark and a close button. The form contains three fields: 'Name: *' with a text input field, 'Folder: *' with a text input field containing '/Credentials' and a browse button (folder icon), and 'Description:' with a large text area. Below the fields is a note: 'Fields marked with an asterisk are required.' At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

- 3 In the *Name* field, specify a unique name for the folder.
The folder cannot have the same name as any folders or credentials that already exist in the folder where you are creating it.
- 4 In the *Folder* field, click  to browse for and select the folder where you want the new folder created.
- 5 Type a description for the new folder, if desired.
- 6 Click *OK* to create the folder.

12.3 Assigning Credential Rights

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.



- 2 In the *Administrators* section, click the underlined link for the administrator for which you want to change rights.
- 3 In the *Assigned Rights* section, click *Add > Credentials*.
- 4 Select folders containing credentials, then modify the rights associated with those folders.
If you need help, click the *Help* button.

12.4 Editing a Credential

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Credential Vault panel, select the check box next to the credential.
- 3 Click *Edit*.
- 4 Edit the fields.
If you need help, click the *Help* button.
- 5 Click *OK*.

12.5 Renaming a Credential


- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Credential Vault panel, select the check box next to the credential.
- 3 Click *Edit > Rename*.
- 4 Type the new name for the credential.
- 5 Click *OK*.

12.6 Copying a Credential

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.

- 2 In the Credential Vault panel, select the check box next to the credential.
- 3 Click *Edit > Copy*.
- 4 Type the name for the copy of the credential.
- 5 Click *OK*.

12.7 Moving a Credential to Another Folder

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Credential Vault panel, select the check box next to the credential.
- 3 Click *Edit > Move*.
- 4 In the *Folder* field, click  to browse for and select the folder where you want the credential moved.
- 5 Click *OK*.

12.8 Removing a Credential

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the Credential Vault panel, select the check box next to the credential.
- 3 Click *Delete*.

ZENworks System Updates

13

The System Updates feature allows you to obtain updates to the Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management software on a timely basis, and also allows you to schedule automatic downloads of the updates.

Software updates are provided periodically and you can choose whether to deploy each update after viewing its content.

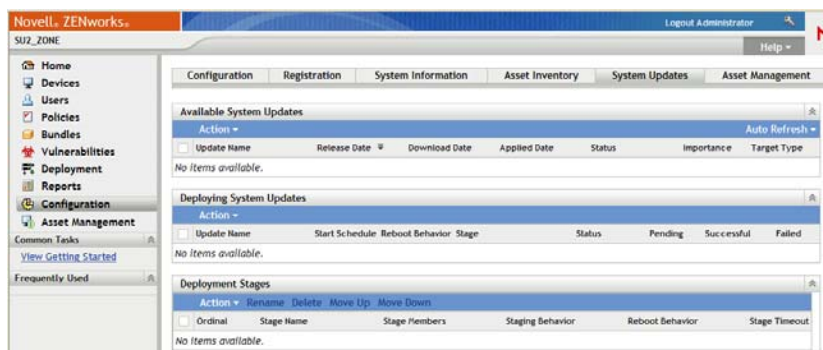
The first few ZENworks 10 Configuration Management updates are cumulative, thereafter they are additive. For example, if the update for version 10.0.3 is your first system update for ZENworks, it includes all updates contained in the update for version 10.0.2. However, you need to apply the update for version 10.0.3 before you can apply the update for version 10.0.4.

You can also download the latest **Product Recognition Update (PRU)** to update your knowledgebase so that Inventory can recognize newer software.

When you select to update your ZENworks software, you can update globally in one step or in stages. You can also select to update specific devices, groups of devices, or all devices in the Management Zone that have the ZENworks software installed. You can use ZENworks Control Center to track the successes and failures per device for each software update.

The following figure illustrates the System Updates page:

Figure 13-1 *System Updates Panels (Available System Updates, Deploying System Updates, and Deployment Stages)*



Review the following sections to set up and manage updates for your ZENworks software:

- ♦ [Section 13.1, “Configuring Updates,” on page 126](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.2, “Managing Update Downloads,” on page 142](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.3, “Deploying Updates,” on page 146](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.4, “Deleting Updates,” on page 160](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.5, “Reviewing the Content of an Update,” on page 160](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.6, “Update Statuses,” on page 163](#)

13.1 Configuring Updates

Perform the following tasks to configure your update process:

- ♦ [Section 13.1.1, “Configuring System Update Settings,” on page 126](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.1.2, “Creating Deployment Stages,” on page 134](#)

13.1.1 Configuring System Update Settings

You should configure System Update before attempting to use it. Configure as many of the following settings as necessary for your system:

- ♦ [“Check for Updates Schedule” on page 126](#)
- ♦ [“Download Schedule” on page 128](#)
- ♦ [“E-Mail Notification” on page 130](#)
- ♦ [“Proxy Server Settings” on page 131](#)
- ♦ [“Dedicated Server Settings” on page 132](#)
- ♦ [“Stage Timeout Settings” on page 133](#)
- ♦ [“Reboot Behavior” on page 134](#)

Check for Updates Schedule

The default is to not schedule update checking (*No Schedule* is displayed in the *Schedule Type* field). With this scheduling option selected, the only way you can check for software updates is to do so manually in the Available System Updates panel on the *System Updates* tab.

You can specify how often you want to check for updates. When you do this, information on available updates is automatically downloaded from Novell to the Available System Updates panel on the *System Updates* tab when the schedule fires. This does not download the update content itself. Downloading can be scheduled in the Download Schedule panel (see [“Download Schedule” on page 128](#)).

To schedule checking for the ZENworks software updates:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 Click *Management Zone Settings* to expand its options, click *Infrastructure Management* to expand its options, then select *System Update Settings*.

In the Check for Updates panel, there are two scheduling options for updates:

- ♦ **No Schedule:** The default is to not schedule update checking. With this scheduling option selected, the only way you can check for software updates is to do so manually in the [Available System Updates](#) panel on the *System Updates* tab. To specify the *No Schedule* option, continue with [Step 3](#).
- ♦ **Recurring:** Lets you specify how often you want to check for updates. When you set this option, information on available updates is automatically downloaded from Novell to the [Available System Updates](#) panel on the *System Updates* tab when the schedule fires. This does not download the update content itself. To set a recurring schedule, skip to [Step 4](#).

- 3 (Conditional) To exclude scheduled checking for software updates (the default), click the down-arrow in the *Schedule Type* field, select *No Schedule*, click *Apply* to save the schedule change, then skip to **Step 6**.

With this option selected, you must check for updates manually. For more information, see [“Manually Downloading Updates” on page 144](#).

- 4 (Conditional) To set a recurring schedule for checking for updates to your ZENworks software, click the down-arrow in the *Schedule Type* field, then select *Recurring*.

[Configuration](#) > System Update Settings

System Update Settings
Configure the server for downloading System Updates, proxy server settings, and scheduling updates

Check For Updates Schedule
This setting allows the administrator to configure a schedule to check for available updates from Novell.

Schedule Type:
Recurring

Days of the week
Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat
☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

Start Time: 1 : 00 am

[Hide Options](#)

☐ Process immediately if device unable to execute on schedule
☐ Use Coordinated Universal Time (Current UTC 7:50 PM)
☐ Start at a random time between Start and End Times
End Time: 1 : 00 am

☐ Restrict schedule execution to the following date range:
Start Date: 2/5/08
End Date: 2/5/08

- 5 Fill in the fields:

5a Select one or more check boxes for the days of the week.

5b To set the time of day for checking to occur, use the *Start Time* box to specify the time.

5c (Optional) For additional scheduling options, click *More Options*, then select the following options as necessary:

- ♦ **Process Immediately if Device Unable to Execute on Schedule:** Causes checking for updates to occur as soon as possible if the checking cannot be done according to schedule. For example, if a server is down at the scheduled time, checking for updates occurs immediately after the server comes back online.
- ♦ **Use Coordinated Universal Time:** Causes the schedule to interpret the times you specify as UTC instead of local time.
- ♦ **Start at a Random Time Between Start and End Times:** Allows checking for updates to occur at a random time between the time you specify here and the time you specified in **Step 5b**. Fill in the *End Time* fields.
- ♦ **Restrict Schedule Execution to the Following Date Range:** In addition to the other options, you can specify a date range for when the checking can occur.

5d When you have finished configuring the recurring schedule, click *Apply* to save the schedule change.

- 6 To exit this page, click *OK* when you are finished configuring the schedule.

If you did not click *Apply* to make some of your changes effective, clicking *OK* does so. Clicking *Cancel* also closes the page, but loses your unapplied changes.

Download Schedule

The default is to not schedule downloading of updates (*No Schedule* is displayed in the *Schedule Type* field). With this scheduling option selected, the only way you can download updates is to do so manually in the Available System Updates panel on the *System Updates* tab.

If you do specify how often you want to download updates, you should set this schedule in conjunction with the schedule to check for updates (see “[Check for Updates Schedule](#)” on [page 126](#)).

After an update has been checked for and its information displayed in the Available System Updates panel on the *System Updates* tab, you can schedule the download from Novell to automatically occur when the schedule fires.

To schedule ZENworks software updates:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 Click *Management Zone Settings* to expand its options, click *Infrastructure Management* to expand its options, then select *System Update Settings*.

In the Download Schedule panel, there are two scheduling options for downloading updates:

- ♦ **No Schedule:** The default is to not schedule downloading of updates (*No Schedule* is displayed in the *Schedule Type* field). With this scheduling option selected, the only way you can download updates is to do so manually in the [Available System Updates](#) panel on the *System Updates* tab. To specify the *No Schedule* option, continue with [Step 3](#).
 - ♦ **Recurring:** You can specify how often you want to download updates. After an update has been checked for and its information displayed in the [Available System Updates](#) panel on the *System Updates* tab, you can schedule the download from Novell to automatically occur when the schedule fires. To set a recurring schedule, skip to [Step 4](#).
- 3 (Conditional) To exclude scheduled downloading of software updates (the default), click the down-arrow in the *Schedule Type* field, select *No Schedule*, click *Apply* to save the schedule change, then skip to [Step 6](#).
With this option selected, you must download updates manually. For more information, see [Section 13.2.2, “Downloading Updates,” on page 143](#).
 - 4 (Conditional) To set a recurring schedule for downloading updates to your ZENworks software, click the down-arrow in the *Schedule Type* field, then select *Recurring*.

System Update Settings
Configure the server for downloading System Updates, proxy server settings, and scheduling updates

Check For Updates Schedule

Download Schedule
This setting allows the administrator to configure a download schedule for updates.

Schedule Type:
Recurring

Days of the week

Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Start Time: 1 : 00 am

[Hide Options](#)

☐ Process immediately if device unable to execute on schedule

☐ Use Coordinated Universal Time (Current UTC 7:52 PM)

☐ Start at a random time between Start and End Times

End Time: 1 : 00 am

☐ Restrict schedule execution to the following date range:

Start Date: 2/5/08

End Date: 2/5/08

5 Fill in the fields:

5a Select one or more check boxes for the days of the week.

5b To set the time of day for downloading to occur, use the *Start Time* field to specify the time.

5c (Optional) For additional scheduling options, click *More Options*, then select the following options as necessary:

- ♦ **Process Immediately if Device Unable to Execute on Schedule:** Causes the checking for updates to occur as soon as possible if the checking cannot be done according to schedule. For example, if a server is down at the scheduled time, checking for updates occurs immediately after the server comes back online.
- ♦ **Use Coordinated Universal Time:** Causes the schedule to interpret the times you specify as UTC instead of local time.
- ♦ **Start at a Random Time Between Start and End Times:** Allows downloading of updates to occur at a random time between the time you specify here and the time you specified in **Step 5b**. Fill in the *End Time* fields.
- ♦ **Restrict Schedule Execution to the Following Date Range:** In addition to the other options, you can specify the days when the downloading can occur.

5d When you have finished configuring the recurring schedule, click *Apply* to save the schedule change.

6 To exit this page, click *OK* when you are finished configuring the schedule.

If you did not click *Apply* to make some of your changes effective, clicking *OK* does so. Clicking *Cancel* also closes the page, but loses your unapplied changes.

E-Mail Notification

In conjunction with **using stages**, you can set up e-mail notifications to indicate when each stage has completed. When you **deploy an update**, you can specify to use the e-mail notifications.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 Click *Management Zone Settings* to expand its options, click *Events and Messaging*, then select *SMTP Settings* to display the E-mail Notification panel:

[Configuration](#) > SMTP Settings

The screenshot shows the 'SMTP Settings' dialog box. The title bar says 'SMTP Settings' with a close button. Below the title bar is a subtitle 'Configuration of settings related to SMTP Server'. The main content area is titled 'E-mail Notification' and contains the following fields:

- SMTP Server Address: A text input field.
- SMTP Port: A text input field.
- ☐ SMTP Server requires authentication: A checkbox.
- User: A text input field.
- Password: A text input field.

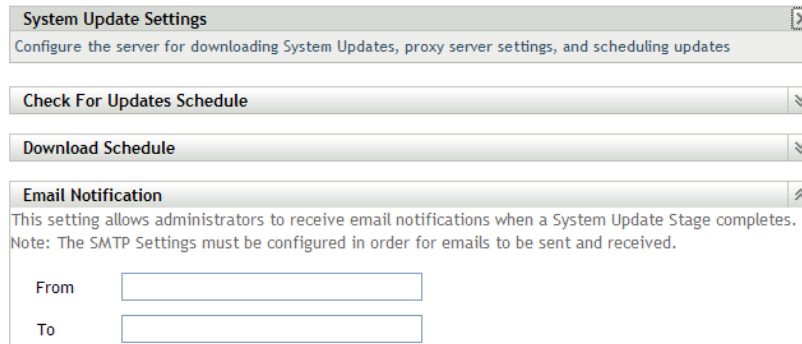
At the bottom of the dialog are four buttons: 'OK', 'Apply', 'Reset', and 'Cancel'.

Staging must be used to receive notifications, and the stage behavior must be set to one of the following:

- ♦ *Advance Through Stage Automatically With Notification*
- ♦ *Advance To Next Stage and Notify When Complete*

SMTP must be configured in order for the staging e-mail configuration to work.

- 3 (Conditional) If you do not have SMTP configured:
 - 3a To access the SMTP Settings page, click *Configuration* in the left pane, click the arrows in the *Management Zone Settings* heading to expand its options, click *Event and Messaging*, then select *SMTP Settings*.
 - 3b In the *E-mail Notification* section, fill in the fields:
 - SMTP Server Address:** Specify the DNS name or IP address of the SMTP server.
 - SMTP Port:** Specify the SMTP server's communication port.
 - SMTP Server Requires Authentication:** If authentication is required, select this check box, then specify the *User* and *Password* information.
 - 3c Click *OK* to save the changes.
 - 3d Click *Management Zone Settings* to expand its options, click *Infrastructure Management*, then select *System Update Settings* to display the E-mail Notification panel:



4 Fill in the fields:

From: Either specify your administrator e-mail address, or type something descriptive, such as: `System-Update-Stage-Notice`. Do not use spaces between words.

To: Specify your administrator's e-mail address.

This is the person you want to be notified when the stage ends.

5 Click *Apply* to make the changes effective.

6 Either click *OK* to close the page, or continue with **another configuration task**.

If you did not click *Apply* to make some of your changes effective, clicking *OK* does so.

Clicking *Cancel* also closes the page, but loses your unapplied changes.

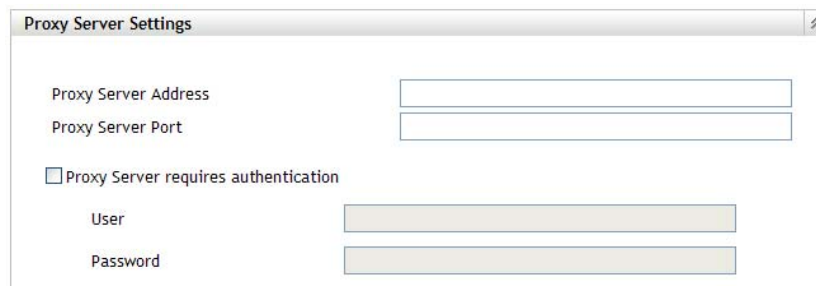
Proxy Server Settings

This option is useful for restrictive environments where you do not want all of your production servers to have Internet access. This is used in conjunction with the **Dedicated Server Settings** panel.

To specify a proxy server:

1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane.

2 On the *Configuration* tab, expand the *Management Zone Settings* section (if necessary), click *Infrastructure Management*, then click *System Update Settings* to display the Proxy Server Settings panel.



3 Fill in the fields:

Proxy Server Address: Specify the DNS name or IP address of the proxy server.

Proxy Server Port: Specify the proxy server's communication port.

Proxy Server Requires Authentication: When you select this check box, the *User* and *Password* fields become editable. If authentication is required, select this check box and specify the username and password for access to the proxy server.

4 Click *Apply* to make the changes effective.

5 Either click *OK* to close the page, or continue with **another configuration task**.

If you did not click *Apply* to make some of your changes effective, clicking *OK* does so. Clicking *Cancel* also closes the page, but loses your unapplied changes.

Dedicated Server Settings

By default, any available Primary Server in the Management Zone can be used randomly to download the updates. However, you can specify one ZENworks Server to be dedicated to handling your update downloads. The server that you select should have access to the Internet, directly or through a **proxy server**.

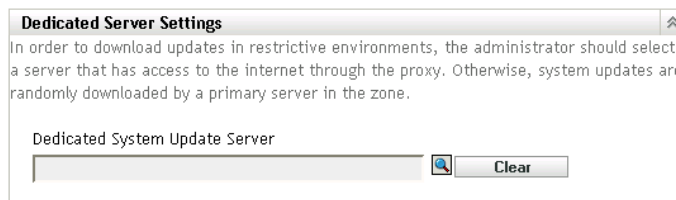
The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ “Specifying a Dedicated Update Server” on page 132
- ♦ “Clearing a Dedicated Update Server” on page 132

Specifying a Dedicated Update Server

1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane.

2 On the *Configuration* tab, expand the *Management Zone Settings* section (if necessary), click *Infrastructure Management*, then click *System Update Settings* to display the Dedicated Server Settings panel:



3 Browse for and select a ZENworks Primary Server.

The server’s identification is displayed in the *Dedicated System Update Server* field.

This ZENworks Server must be a member of the Management Zone.

4 Click *Apply* to make the changes effective.

5 Either click *OK* to close the page, or continue with **another configuration task**.

If you did not click *Apply* to make some of your changes effective, clicking *OK* does so. Clicking *Cancel* also closes the page, but loses your unapplied changes.

Clearing a Dedicated Update Server

Clearing a dedicated update server causes your updates to be retrieved randomly from any Primary Server in the Management Zone.

1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane.

- 2 On the *Configuration* tab, expand the *Management Zone Settings* section (if necessary), click *Infrastructure Management*, then click *System Update Settings* to display the Dedicated Server Settings panel:



- 3 Click *Clear* to remove the dedicated server from the *Dedicated System Update Server* field.
- 4 (Conditional) If you need to revert to the last saved dedicated server setting, click *Reset*.
This resets the dedicated server to the last saved setting, such as when you last clicked *Apply* or *OK*.
- 5 Click *Apply* to make the change effective.

IMPORTANT: Previous settings cannot be restored after you click *Apply*.

Stage Timeout Settings

Deployment stages are optional; however, stages allow you to deploy an update one step at a time, such as to a test group first, then to your managed devices. **If a failure occurs during the update process, the process is halted. E-mail notifications** can let you know when each stage has completed.

The global default timeout setting is 3 days. This provides the same timeout length for each stage. For information about setting the timeout for individual stages, see **“Modifying the Stage Timeout” on page 138**.

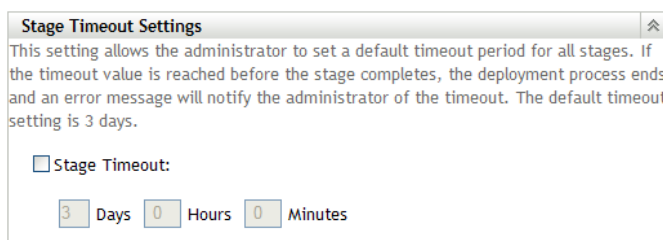
Set this value to be long enough to accommodate updating all of the devices you plan to update. If it is too short, some devices might not be updated.

If the timeout value is reached before a stage completes, the deployment process is paused and an error message is sent to the administrator. The deployment process is paused until the errors are resolved and the administrator restarts the process by clicking *Clear Error and Retry*.

You can use **E-mail notification** to know when a stage has completed.

To configure global stage timeout settings:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane.
- 2 On the *Configuration* tab, expand the *Management Zone Settings* panel (if necessary), click *Infrastructure Management*, then click *System Update Settings* to display the Stage Timeout Settings panel:



- 3 Select the *Stage Timeout* check box, then specify the days, hours, and minutes desired.
- 4 Click *Apply* to make the changes effective.
- 5 Either click *OK* to close the page, or continue with **another configuration task**.

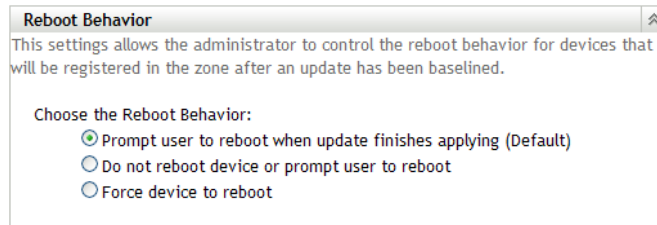
If you did not click *Apply* to make some of your changes effective, clicking *OK* does so. Clicking *Cancel* also closes the page, but loses your unapplied changes.

Reboot Behavior

Some updates do not require a device to be rebooted after they have been deployed to a device. However, if a reboot is required to complete the update process, the deployment is not completed until the device is rebooted.

To configure the reboot behavior:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane.
- 2 On the *Configuration* tab, expand the *Management Zone Settings* panel (if necessary), click *Infrastructure Management*, then click *System Update Settings* to display the Reboot Behavior panel:



- 3 Select one of the following options:
 - ♦ **Prompt User to Reboot When Update Finishes Applying (Default):** After the update has been applied, a request to reboot is immediately displayed. If the user initially rejects rebooting, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, which continues until the device is rebooted.
 - ♦ **Do Not Reboot Device:** The device does not reboot; however, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted.
 - ♦ **Force Device to Reboot:** After the update has been applied, the device is automatically rebooted without user intervention if a reboot is required by the update.
- 4 Click *Apply* to make the changes effective.
- 5 Either click *OK* to close the page, or continue with **another configuration task**.

If you did not click *Apply* to make some of your changes effective, clicking *OK* does so. Clicking *Cancel* also closes the page, but loses your unapplied changes.

13.1.2 Creating Deployment Stages

Deployment stages are optional; however, stages allow you to deploy an update one step at a time, such as to a test group first, then to your managed devices. **If a failure occurs during the update process, the process is halted. E-mail notifications** can let you know when each stage has completed.

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ “Understanding Stages” on page 135
- ♦ “Creating and Populating a Deployment Stage” on page 137
- ♦ “Modifying the Stage Timeout” on page 138
- ♦ “Modifying Staging Behavior” on page 139
- ♦ “Modifying Reboot Behavior” on page 139
- ♦ “Modifying the Membership of a Deployment Stage” on page 140
- ♦ “Renaming a Deployment Stage” on page 141
- ♦ “Deleting a Deployment Stage” on page 141
- ♦ “Rearranging the Order in Which Stages Start” on page 141

Understanding Stages

You can do the following with stages:

- ♦ Set them up for different devices or groups, such as for a test group, specific devices or device groups, or all managed devices in the zone.
- ♦ Modify an existing stage’s membership.
- ♦ Change the order in which the stages run.
- ♦ Rename and delete stages.
- ♦ Specify the default timeout for a stage. If that time is reached, the update process is paused until the errors are resolved and the administrator restarts the process.
- ♦ Specify the reboot behavior when devices complete the update: prompt a reboot, force a reboot, or suppress rebooting.
- ♦ Specify how the update process is to advance through the stages:
 - ♦ Automatically, with or without notification
 - ♦ One stage at a time with notification when each stage is completed
 - ♦ Bypass the configured stages and immediately apply the update to all devices

There are many reasons for creating deployment stages:

- ♦ Testing the update on certain devices before deploying it to your production environment
- ♦ Including all Primary servers in one stage so they can be updated at the same time.
- ♦ Grouping your servers in several stages so that the update process isn’t too intensive for the Primary Server being used to perform the updates.
- ♦ Grouping the workstations in several stages so that the update process isn’t too intensive for the Primary Server being used to perform the updates.

Any managed devices that are not part of a stage are automatically updated after the last deployment stage has been processed.

You cannot configure stages when an update is in progress.

The following figure illustrates the Deployment Stages panel on the System Updates page:

Figure 13-2 *The Deployment Stages Panel*

Deployment Stages					
Action ▾ Rename Delete Move Up Move Down					
<input type="checkbox"/>	Ordinal	Stage Name	Stage Members	Staging Behavior	Reboot Behavior Stage Timeout
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Deployment Stage: Test	View/Modify Members	Advance Through Stage Automatically Prompt User	3 days 0 hours 0 minutes
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Deployment Stage: Production	View/Modify Members	Advance Through Stage Automatically Prompt User	3 days 0 hours 0 minutes

The following table explains the column information. For some columns, you can sort the listed information by clicking a column heading. Click it again to reverse the sorting order.

Column Heading	Explanation
<i>Ordinal</i>	<p>Displays the order in which the stages run. You can rearrange the staging order by using the <i>Move Up</i> and <i>Move Down</i> options. For more information, see “Rearranging the Order in Which Stages Start” on page 141.</p> <p>The first stage listed always displays ordinal 1, the second, ordinal 2, and so on. Therefore, you do not need to include a sequence number in your stage names.</p>
<i>Stage Name</i>	<p>Name of the stage, which you specify when creating the stage by using the <i>Action > Add Stage</i> option.</p> <p>Make this name descriptive enough to indicate its purpose.</p>
<i>Stage Members</i>	<p>This column contains the <i>View/Modify Members</i> option, which opens the Modify Stage Members dialog box that lists all of the members of the stage. You can use the dialog box to add or remove members from the stage.</p> <p>Stage membership can include individual devices and groups that contain devices.</p> <p>For more information, see “Modifying the Membership of a Deployment Stage” on page 140.</p>
<i>Staging Behavior</i>	<p>Displays the current behavior for each stage, which you can change by using the <i>Action > Modify Staging Behavior</i> option. For more information, see “Modifying Staging Behavior” on page 139.</p>
<i>Reboot Behavior</i>	<p>Displays the reboot behavior of devices after the update is deployed.</p> <p>Some updates do not require a device to be rebooted after they have been deployed to a device. However, if a reboot is required to complete the update process, the deployment is not completed until the device is rebooted.</p> <p>You have the following reboot options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Prompt User to Reboot When Update Finishes Applying (Default): After the update has been applied, a request to reboot is immediately displayed. If the user initially rejects rebooting, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted. ♦ Do Not Reboot Device: The device does not reboot; however, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted. ♦ Force Device to Reboot: After the update has been applied, the device is automatically rebooted without user intervention, if a reboot is required by the update. <p>For more information, see “Modifying Reboot Behavior” on page 139.</p>

Column Heading	Explanation
<i>Stage Timeout</i>	<p>Displays the stage timeout, listed in minutes, which you can change by using the <i>Action > Modify Stage Timeout</i> option. The default is 3 days, 0 hours, and 0 minutes, which is the global timeout value that can be changed in “Stage Timeout Settings” on page 133. Changing the value here only changes it for the selected deployment stage.</p> <p>When this time value is reached, the stage’s deployment terminates and the next stage starts. If the time is not long enough, the deployment might not be completed to all of the devices that are members of the stage.</p> <p>For more information, see “Modifying the Stage Timeout” on page 138.</p>

Creating and Populating a Deployment Stage

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.

Ordinal	Stage Name	Stage Members	Staging Behavior	Reboot Behavior	Stage Timeout
1	Deployment Stage: Test	View/Modify Members	Advance Through Stage Automatically	Prompt User	3 days 0 hours 0 minutes
2	Deployment Stage: Production	View/Modify Members	Advance Through Stage Automatically	Prompt User	3 days 0 hours 0 minutes

- 2 In the Deployment Stages panel, click *Action*, then select *Add Stage*.

You cannot add a stage while a deployment is in process.

- 3 Specify a deployment stage name, then click *OK*.

Deployment stages appear as device folders on the *Devices* tab, so you should specify names that help you to know a folder’s purpose.

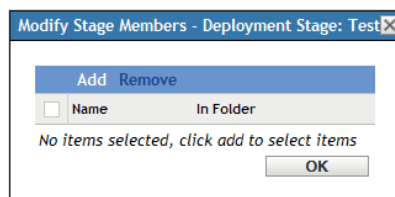
You might want to include something like “Deployment Stage” at the beginning of the name to sort the groups in the devices listing in ZENworks Control Center.

For information about naming in ZENworks Control Center, see [Appendix B, “Naming Conventions in ZENworks Control Center,”](#) on [page 215](#).

A newly created stage does not have any members. You must modify the stage’s membership to add them.

- 4 Add devices to a deployment stage:

- 4a In the *Stage Members* column, click *View/Modify Members* for the stage for which you want to add members.



- 4b Click *Add*, browse for and select the devices, then click *OK*.

You can add individual devices or device groups, or any combination of them.

You can have both managed servers and workstations in the same deployment stage or in different stages, or you can split your servers and workstations into separate deployment stages.

IMPORTANT: Some of your network servers will be Primary Servers for use in ZENworks management, while other servers on your network might only be managed devices with the ZENworks Adaptive Agent installed on them.

You must update your Primary Servers before updating any of the other managed servers and especially before updating any managed workstations.

- 4c** Repeat **Step 4b** until you are finished adding members to the stage.
 - 4d** To add members to another stage, repeat **Step 4a** through **Step 4c**.
 - 5** Repeat **Step 2** through **Step 4** until you have created all of your deployment stages.
 - 6** If you need to reorder the sequence of the deployment stages, select a stage, then click *Move Up* or *Move Down*.
- If you are using one of the stages for test purposes, make sure that it is first in the listing.

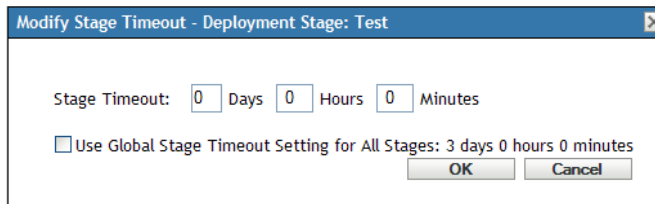
Modifying the Stage Timeout

A stage timeout sets the length of time before a stage terminates. The default timeout is 3 days. You set the value for individual stage timeouts by using the procedure in this section. The global stage timeout value is established by following the steps in “[Stage Timeout Settings](#)” on page 133.

You cannot modify a stage if an update is in progress.

To set the timeout value for a selected stage:

- 1** In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2** In the Deployment Stages panel, select the check box for a stage, click *Action*, then select *Modify Stage Timeout* to display the following dialog box:



- 3** Specify the timeout value.

This change in timeout value only applies to the selected stage. If you specify a timeout value for this stage, set its value to be long enough to accommodate updating all of the devices in the stage. If you don't allow enough time, some devices might not be updated.

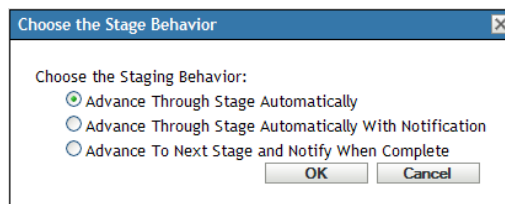
If the timeout value is reached before the stage completes, the deployment process is terminated and an error message is sent to the administrator.
- 4** (Optional) Select the *Use Global Stage Timeout Setting for All Stages* check box to specify using the global timeout value (default of 3 days, 0 hours, and 0 minutes).

For more information, see “[Stage Timeout Settings](#)” on page 133.
- 5** Click *OK*.

Modifying Staging Behavior

The default stage behavior is to automatically advance through the configured stages. You can change this default behavior for all stages.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Deployment Stages panel, select the check box for one or more stages, click *Action*, then select *Modify Stage Behavior* to display the following dialog box:



- 3 Select one of the following stage behaviors:

Advance Through Stages Automatically: As soon as one stage has completed its updates, the next stage begins. This is the default behavior (its check box is enabled).

After the last stage has completed, all applicable devices that are not members of a stage are then processed.

Advance Through Stages Automatically with Notification: Starts the first stage, sends an e-mail notification when it has completed, then automatically starts the next stage, and so on.

To use this option, a notification method must be set up on the [System Update Download Settings page](#) in the *E-mail Notification* section.

Advance to Next Stage and Notify When Complete: Use this method for user action between the stages, such as reviewing the results of an update to a test group.

This option automatically starts the first stage. After any stage has completed, e-mail notification is sent, then the system waits for you to manually start the next stage.

To use this option, a notification method must be set up on the [System Update Download Settings page](#) in the *E-mail Notification* section.

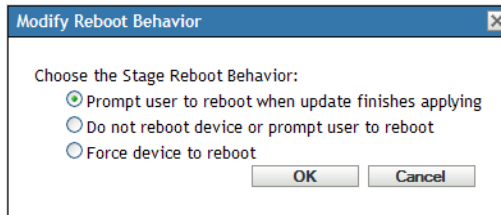
- 4 Click *OK*.

Modifying Reboot Behavior

Some updates do not require a device to be rebooted after they have been deployed to a device. However, if a reboot is required to complete the update process, the deployment is not completed until the device is rebooted.

To modify the reboot behavior:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Deployment Stages panel, select the check box for one or more the deployment stages, click *Action*, then click *Modify Reboot Behavior*.



3 Select one of the following options:

- ♦ **Prompt User to Reboot When Update Finishes Applying (Default):** After the update has been applied, a request to reboot is immediately displayed. If the user initially rejects rebooting, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted.
- ♦ **Do Not Reboot Device:** The device does not reboot; however, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted.
- ♦ **Force Device to Reboot:** After the update has been applied, the device is automatically rebooted without user intervention, if a reboot is required by the update.

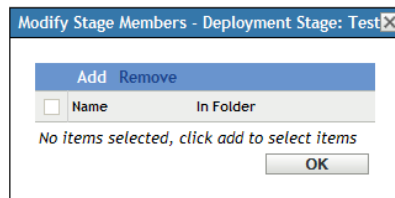
4 Click *OK*.

Modifying the Membership of a Deployment Stage

1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.

2 (Optional) Add devices to a deployment stage:

2a In the *Stage Members* column, click *View/Modify Members* for the stage for which you want to add members.



2b Click *Add*, browse for and select the devices, then click *OK*.

You can add individual devices or device groups, or any combination of them.

You can have both managed servers and workstations in the same deployment stage or in different stages, or you can split your servers and workstations into separate deployment stages.

IMPORTANT: Some of your network servers will be Primary Servers for use in ZENworks management, while other servers on your network might only be managed devices with the ZENworks Adaptive Agent installed on them.

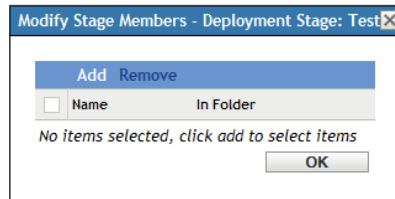
You must update your Primary Servers before updating any of the other managed servers and especially before updating any managed workstations.

2c Repeat **Step 2b** until you are finished adding members to the stage.

2d To add members to another stage, repeat **Step 2a** through **Step 2c**.

3 (Optional) Remove devices from a deployment stage:

- 3a** In the *Stage Members* column, click *View/Modify Members* for the stage for which you want to remove members.



- 3b** Select the check box next one or more devices that you want to remove, then click *Remove*.
- 4** Click *OK* when you have finished configuring the stage's membership.

Renaming a Deployment Stage

- 1** In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2** In the Deployment Stages panel, click the check box for the deployment stage to be renamed.
- 3** Click *Rename*.
- 4** In the Rename dialog box, specify the new name, then click *OK*.

For information about naming in ZENworks Control Center, see [Appendix B, "Naming Conventions in ZENworks Control Center,"](#) on page 215.

Deleting a Deployment Stage

- 1** In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2** In the Deployment Stages panel, click the check box for one or more of the deployment stages to be deleted.
- 3** Click *Delete*.

Deleted stages cannot be recovered.

Rearranging the Order in Which Stages Start

All updates that use stages deploy to the devices that are members of the stages according to the currently listed staging order.

To rearrange the staging order:

- 1** In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2** In the Deployment Stages panel, click the check box for the deployment stage to be moved.
- 3** Click *Move Up* or *Move Down* as necessary to rearrange the staging order.
- 4** Repeat [Step 2](#) and [Step 3](#) as necessary for each stage.

13.2 Managing Update Downloads

The Available System Updates panel on the System Updates page displays the updates that are available after you have checked for them. This includes the Product Recognition Update (PRU), which Novell provides to update your knowledgebase so that ZENworks Inventory can recognize newer software. The display refreshed according to the schedule you set in “[Check for Updates Schedule](#)” on page 126.

The first few ZENworks 10 Configuration Management updates are cumulative, thereafter they are additive. For example, if the update for version 10.0.3 is your first system update for ZENworks, it includes all updates contained in the update for version 10.0.2. However, you need to apply the update for version 10.0.3 before you can apply the update for version 10.0.4.

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [Section 13.2.1, “Understanding Available Updates,”](#) on page 142
- ♦ [Section 13.2.2, “Downloading Updates,”](#) on page 143
- ♦ [Section 13.2.3, “Downloading and Installing the PRU,”](#) on page 145

13.2.1 Understanding Available Updates

The following figure illustrates the Available System Updates panel:

Figure 13-3 Available System Updates Panel

Available System Updates							
Action ▾							Auto Refresh ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	Update Name ▾	Release Date	Download Date	Applied Date	Status	Importance	Target Type
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.5	Mar 7, 2008			Error	Optional	ZENworks Servers
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.4	Jan 1, 2008			Available	Optional	All Devices
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.3	Dec 25, 2007			Available	Optional	All Devices
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.2	Oct 31, 2007			Available	Optional	ZENworks Servers
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM 10.0.2 (SU 1)	Oct 12, 2007			Baselined	Mandatory	ZENworks Servers

1 - 5 of 10 show 5 items

The following table explains the column information and the *Auto Refresh* drop-down list (on the right side of the panel, above *Target Type*). For some columns, you can sort the listed information by clicking a column heading. Click it again to reverse the sorting order.

Column Heading or List	Explanation
<i>Update Name</i>	Displays the name of the update, which is created by Novell. Click the name to access the Release Details page. For more information, see Section 13.5, “Reviewing the Content of an Update,” on page 160.
<i>Release Date</i>	Displays the date that Novell created the update.
<i>Download Date</i>	Displays the date that you downloaded the update.
<i>Applied Date</i>	Displays the date that you applied the update.
<i>Status</i>	Displays the current status of the update, which is automatically updated every 15 seconds. For more information on the individual statuses, see Section 13.6, “Update Statuses,” on page 163.

Column Heading or List	Explanation
<i>Importance</i>	<p>Displays the relative importance of the update's content to your ZENworks installation. Some possible entries include:</p> <p>OPTIONAL: Not required for normal operation of ZENworks 10 Configuration Management.</p> <p>MANDATORY: A required update that must be applied.</p>
<i>Target Type</i>	<p>Displays the type of update, such as:</p> <p>ZENworks Servers: The update applies only to ZENworks Servers.</p> <p>All Devices: The update applies to all managed devices, including ZENworks Servers.</p>
Auto Refresh	<p>Click <i>Auto Refresh</i> (the menu item on the right side of the panel, above <i>Target Type</i>), then select one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ No Auto Refresh ♦ 15-second Refresh ♦ 30-second Refresh ♦ 60-second Refresh <p>By default the panel view is not automatically refreshed. However, you can manually refresh the view by clicking the <i>System Updates</i> tab.</p>

13.2.2 Downloading Updates

You can schedule the downloads, or download them manually:

- ♦ [“Scheduling Update Downloads” on page 143](#)
- ♦ [“Manually Checking for Updates” on page 143](#)
- ♦ [“Manually Downloading Updates” on page 144](#)
- ♦ [“Manually Importing Updates to Servers without Internet Connectivity” on page 145](#)

Scheduling Update Downloads

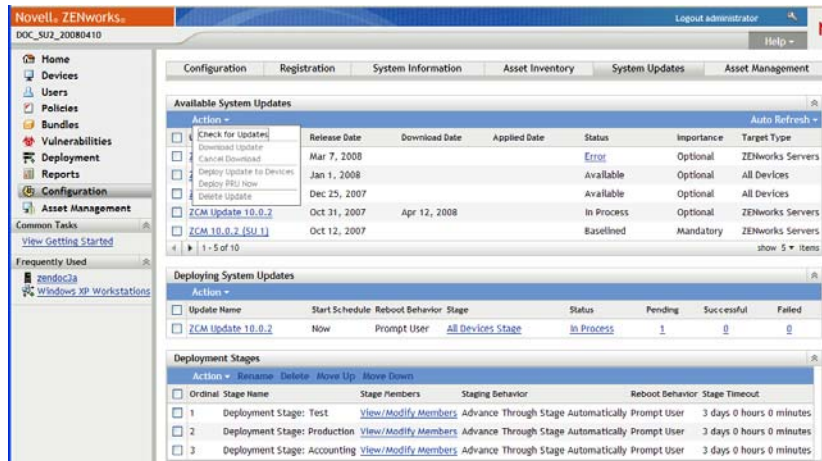
You can schedule both checking for updates and downloading them:

- ♦ [“Check for Updates Schedule” on page 126](#)
- ♦ [“Download Schedule” on page 128](#)

Manually Checking for Updates

If the most recent updates are not being displayed in the Available System Updates panel on the System Updates page, you can manually refresh the display.

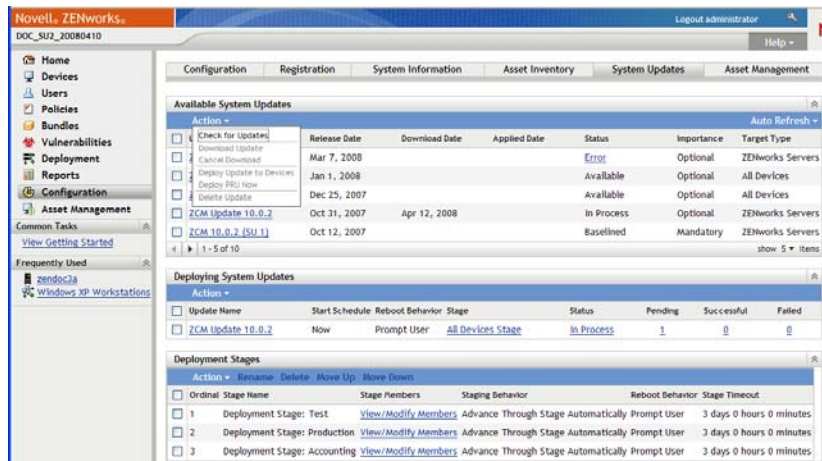
- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.



- 2 On the Available System Updates panel, click *Action > Check for Updates*.
Any available updates are displayed with a status of *Available*.
- 3 To re-sort the listed updates, click the heading for any of the columns in the Available System Updates panel.
Click the heading a second time to reverse the sorting order.

Manually Downloading Updates

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.



- 2 In the Available System Updates panel, select the check box next to one or more updates, click *Action*, then click *Download Update*.
The update is downloaded and its status is eventually set to *Downloaded*.
Depending on the size of the update, the downloading process can take some time.
- 3 To refresh the view of the download progress (*Status* column), click the *System Updates* tab or use the **Auto Refresh** option.
- 4 If you want to use deployment stages to apply the selected updates, go to **Section 13.3, "Deploying Updates,"** on page 146 to configure the stages and deploy the updates.

or

To immediately apply the downloaded updates to all applicable devices in the Management Zone, select the check box for the downloaded update that you want to deploy, then click *Action > Deploy Update to Devices*. The Create System Update Deployment Wizard steps you through the deployment process. For more information, see [Section 13.3, “Deploying Updates,”](#) on page 146.

Manually Importing Updates to Servers without Internet Connectivity

If you have servers in your environment that do not have Internet access, you can obtain the update or Product Recognition Update (PRU) files from the [Novell Downloads page \(http://download.novell.com\)](http://download.novell.com), copy the files onto a CD or other media, and then use the CD to import the files to a Primary ZENworks server using the `zman system-update-import` command. For more information, see “[System Update/Product Recognition Update Commands](#)” in the “[ZENworks Command Line Utilities](#)” guide.

After the files are on a ZENworks Primary Server, the update or PRU displays in the Available System Updates panel on the *System Updates* tab in ZENworks Control Center (*Configuration > System Updates*). You can then follow the instructions in [Section 13.3, “Deploying Updates,”](#) on page 146 to deploy the update to managed devices.

13.2.3 Downloading and Installing the PRU

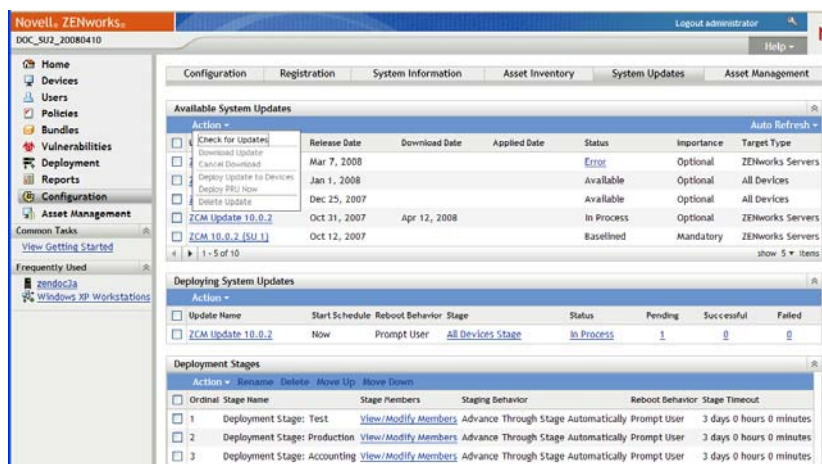
Novell provides a Product Recognition Update (PRU) to update your knowledgebase so that ZENworks Inventory can recognize newer software.

This action deploys the PRU to your database and sets its deployment to your managed devices to be scheduled. Deployment is then done by the ZENworks Adaptive Agent on the devices.

If the PRU is not up-to-date, Inventory might return some software as unrecognized. However, you can use the [Local Software Products](#) utility to take a fingerprint of the unrecognized software to update your knowledgebase.

To download and install the PRU:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.



- 2 If a PRU is not displayed in the Available System Updates panel, click *Action > Check for Updates*.

Information for the latest PRU is displayed, if it is available.

- 3 To download a listed PRU, go to the Available System Updates panel, select the check box for a listed PRU, then click *Action > Download Update*.
- 4 To install a downloaded PRU, go to the Available System Updates panel, then click *Action > Deploy PRU Now*.

The PRU is now listed in the Deploying System Updates panel, where its progress is displayed.

13.3 Deploying Updates

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [Section 13.3.1, “Understanding Deploying Updates,” on page 146](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.3.2, “Deploying Updates,” on page 148](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.3.3, “Starting the Pending Stage,” on page 154](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.3.4, “Rescheduling a Deployment,” on page 155](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.3.5, “Bypassing Staging,” on page 155](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.3.6, “Canceling a Deployment,” on page 155](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.3.7, “Clearing an Error to Retry a Deployment,” on page 156](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.3.8, “Viewing Status by Device,” on page 156](#)

13.3.1 Understanding Deploying Updates

You have the following options for deploying an update:

- ♦ Deploy the update to all devices without using deployment stages. You can schedule the deployment.
- ♦ Deploy the update by using deployment stages where one stage automatically starts after the previous one has completed, unless you have configured stages to pause the deployment and send e-mail notifications to the administrator. You can schedule the deployment.
- ♦ Deploy the update by using deployment stages with e-mail notification to allow manual control for starting the next stage. You can use this option to test the update before deploying it to all devices in your production environment. You can schedule the deployment.
- ♦ Deploy the update to specific devices (selected individually and by device groups) without using deployment stages. You can use this option to test the update before deploying it to all devices in your production environment. You can schedule the deployment.

WARNING: After an update has been deployed, it cannot be removed by using ZENworks 10 Configuration Management. If you need to remove an update, contact [Novell Support \(http://www.novell.com/support\)](http://www.novell.com/support) for assistance.

If you choose to retire a managed device in ZENworks Control Center before deploying an update to all the devices in the Management Zone, you must first ensure that the device has retired and subsequently apply the update. The device gets retired only when the ZENworks Adaptive Agent installed on the device is refreshed. If you deploy the update before the agent is refreshed, the update

is applied to the retired device also. The agent is automatically refreshed during the next device refresh schedule (the default device refresh interval is set to 12 hours). If you want to deploy the update before the next device refresh schedule, you must manually refresh the agent.

The Deploying System Updates panel displays the progress and results of deploying an update.

Updates are removed from this panel when the entire update process completes. You can view the Deployment History panel on the Release Details page for information on deployed updates.

The following figure illustrates the Deploying System Updates panel:

Figure 13-4 Deploying System Updates Panel

Deploying System Updates							
Action ▾							
<input type="checkbox"/> Update Name	Start Schedule	Reboot Behavior	Stage	Status	Pending	Successful	Failed
<input type="checkbox"/> ZCM Update 10.0.2	Now	Prompt User	All Devices Stage	In Process	1	0	0

The following table explains the column information. For some columns, you can sort the listed information by clicking a column heading. Click it again to reverse the sorting order.

Column Heading	Explanation
<i>Update Name</i>	<p>Displays the name of the update, which is created by Novell.</p> <p>Click the name to access the Status by Device page. You can also click the underlined number in the <i>Pending</i>, <i>Successful</i>, or <i>Failed</i> columns to view the appropriate Status by Device page, filtered to display devices with that status.</p>
<i>Start Schedule</i>	<p>Displays the current schedule, if any has been set. Use the Reschedule Deployment action to reschedule the update. For more information, see Section 13.3.4, “Rescheduling a Deployment,” on page 155.</p> <p>Each device can have its own schedule.</p>
<i>Reboot Behavior</i>	<p>Displays the reboot behavior of devices after the update is deployed.</p> <p>Some updates do not require a device to be rebooted after they have been deployed to a device. However, if a reboot is required to complete the update process, the deployment is not completed until the device is rebooted.</p> <p>The following explains how each option works:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Prompt User to Reboot When Update Finishes Applying: After the update has been applied, a request to reboot is immediately displayed. If the user initially rejects rebooting, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted. This is the default. ♦ Do Not Reboot Device: The device does not reboot; however, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted. ♦ Force Device to Reboot: After the update has been applied, the device is automatically rebooted without user intervention, if a reboot is required by the update.

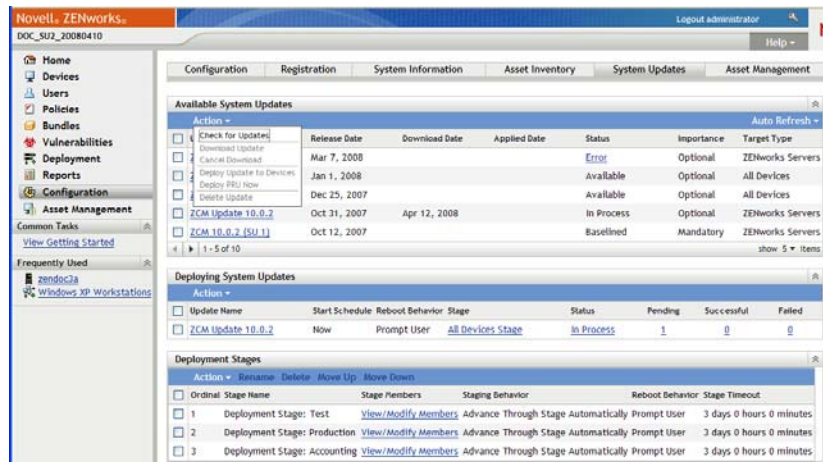
Column Heading	Explanation
<i>Stage</i>	<p>Indicates the deployment state. The possible entries are:</p> <p>stage_name: The update is being deployed to the managed devices that are members of the current stage that is listed. <i>All Devices Stage</i> is displayed after the last stage has completed, which means any devices left in the Management Zone that were not part of a completed stage are then receiving the update. In other words, managed devices are not allowed to skip an update.</p> <p>Selected Devices Stage: The update is being deployed to selected managed devices without the use of stages.</p> <p>All Devices Stage: The update is being deployed to all managed devices in the Management Zone without the use of stages.</p> <p>If stages are being used, click a stage name to view the device status for each stage member. For more information, see Section 13.3.8, "Viewing Status by Device," on page 156.</p>
<i>Status</i>	<p>Indicates the status of the update being deployed (for the current stage, if stages are being used). For information on the possible statuses, see Section 13.6, "Update Statuses," on page 163.</p> <p>Click an item in the <i>Status</i> column to view a message explaining the current status.</p> <p>When the status for an update reaches either the APPLIED or BASELINE status, the update deployment item is no longer displayed in this panel, but is displayed in the Deployment History panel. For more information, see Section 13.3.8, "Viewing Status by Device," on page 156.</p>
<i>Pending</i>	<p>Displays the number of devices for which the update deployment process is pending. A device can be pending if it is a member of a stage when stages are not automatically started after another stage completes.</p> <p>Click the number to view the Status by Device page, which displays the devices that have a pending deployment of the update. For more information, see Section 13.3.8, "Viewing Status by Device," on page 156.</p>
<i>Successful</i>	<p>Displays the number of devices for which the update deployment process is complete.</p> <p>Click the number to view the Status by Device page, which displays the devices that successfully received the update. For more information, see Section 13.3.8, "Viewing Status by Device," on page 156.</p>
<i>Failed</i>	<p>Number of devices for which the update deployment process has failed.</p> <p>Click the number to view the Status by Device page, which displays the devices that failed to receive the update. For more information, see Section 13.3.8, "Viewing Status by Device," on page 156.</p> <p>For failed deployments, you have the option of ignoring the error and continuing, or you can redeploy the update if the error has been resolved.</p>

13.3.2 Deploying Updates

- 1 (Optional) If you want to use deployment stages, set them up if you have not previously done so.

For more information, see [Section 13.1.2, “Creating Deployment Stages,”](#) on page 134.

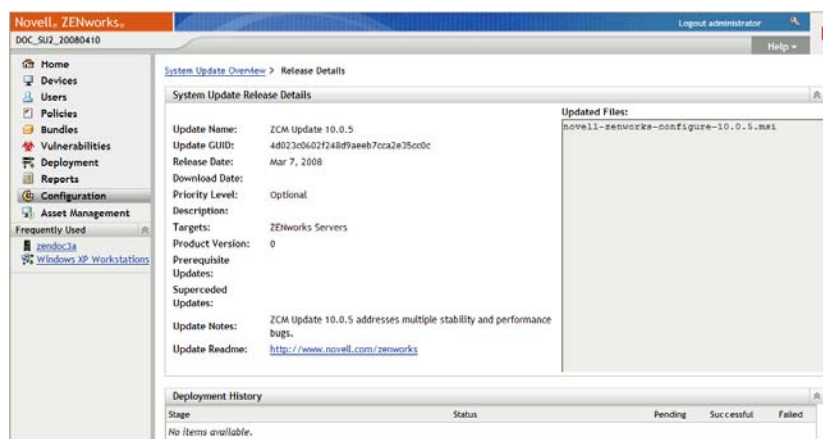
- 2 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab to display the Available System Updates panel:



- 3 (Conditional) If new updates are not being displayed, click *Action > Check for Updates*. The following illustrates available updates:

Action	Update Name	Release Date	Download Date	Applied Date	Status	Importance	Target Type
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.5	Mar 7, 2008			Available	Optional	ZENworks Servers
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.4	Jan 1, 2008			Available	Optional	All Devices
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.3	Dec 25, 2007			Available	Optional	All Devices
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.2	Oct 31, 2007			Available	Optional	ZENworks Servers
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM 10.0.2 (SU 1)	Oct 12, 2007			Baselined	Mandatory	ZENworks Servers
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM 10.0.1 (PMR)	Jul 12, 2007			Baselined	Mandatory	ZENworks Servers
<input type="checkbox"/>	Update for ZCM 10.0.8	Apr 8, 2008	Apr 11, 2008		Aborted	Optional	All Devices
<input type="checkbox"/>	Update for ZCM 10.0.7	Apr 7, 2008			Available	Optional	All Devices
<input type="checkbox"/>	Update for ZCM 10.0.6	Apr 7, 2008	Apr 10, 2008	Apr 10, 2008	Baselined	Optional	All Devices
<input type="checkbox"/>	20 content files	Aug 19, 2006	Apr 10, 2008		Downloaded	Optional	All Devices

- 4 (Optional) To view the content of an available update, click the name of the update (in the *Update Name* column) to display the Release Details page:



For more information, see [Section 13.5, “Reviewing the Content of an Update,”](#) on page 160.

- 5 To download an update, select the check box for it, click *Action* > then click *Download Updates*.

After an update has completed downloading, its status is automatically changed to Downloaded. The length of time to download an update depends on its size and your hardware configuration.

You can download multiple updates at a time, but you can only deploy one at a time. Because these steps are repeated for each update, you only need to download the update you plan to deploy at this time.

The following illustrates downloaded updates:

Available System Updates							
Action		Auto Refresh					
<input type="checkbox"/>	Update Name	Release Date	Download Date	Applied Date	Status	Importance	Target Type
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.5	Mar 7, 2008			Error	Optional	ZENworks Servers
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.4	Jan 1, 2008			Available	Optional	All Devices
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.3	Dec 25, 2007			Available	Optional	All Devices
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.2	Oct 31, 2007	Apr 12, 2008		In Process	Optional	ZENworks Servers
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM 10.0.2 (SU 1)	Oct 12, 2007			Baselined	Mandatory	ZENworks Servers

- 6 Determine whether to deploy the downloaded update, then select its check box.

You can deploy only one update at a time.

If you want to review the content of the update that you downloaded, see [Section 13.5, “Reviewing the Content of an Update,” on page 160](#) for instructions about reviewing the content of a downloaded update.

If you want to download a different update for deployment, return to [Step 4](#).

- 7 Click *Action* > *Deploy Update to Devices*.

This starts the Create System Update Deployment Wizard for deploying the update to all applicable devices. If deployment stages are enabled, they can be used.

The Deployment Wizard provides you with many options, including scheduling the deployment.

Create System Update Deployment

Step 1: Choose the Reboot Behavior for the Deployment

Update Name: Update for ZCM 10.0.7

Release Date: Apr 7, 2008

Download Date: Apr 12, 2008

Priority Level: OPTIONAL

Description:

Targets:

Product Version: 0

Update Notes:

Update Readme:

Updated Files:

Choose the Deployment Option for the Management Zone:

☐ Deploy System Updates to Selected Devices in the Management Zone

☒ Deploy System Updates to All Devices in the Management Zone

☐ Deploy System Updates using Stages to Devices in the Management Zone

<< Back

Next >>

Cancel

8 In the Deployment Wizard, complete the following steps:

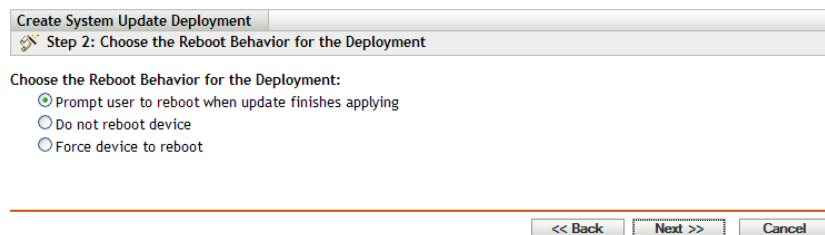
8a On the Choose the System Update and Deployment Option page, select a deployment options (all of them can be scheduled in a subsequent wizard page).

Depending on the size of your ZENworks system, we recommend as best practice to deploy the selected update to all ZENworks Servers before deploying the update to the managed devices that contact those servers. In a production environment, we recommend that you use the *Deploy System Updates to Selected Devices in the Management Zone* option to update the servers first and then update the managed devices, or you should use the *Deploy System Updates Using Stages to Devices in the Management Zone* option to deploy the update to a stage containing servers before deploying the update to another stage containing managed devices.

- ♦ **Deploy System Updates to Selected Devices in the Management Zone:** Deploys the selected update to only the devices that you select in [Step 8e](#). Stages are not used.
- ♦ **Deploy System Updates to All Devices in the Management Zone:** Deploys the selected update to all devices in the Management Zone. Stages are not used. This option does not guarantee that ZENworks Servers are updated before managed devices. In a large ZENworks system or in a production environment, we recommend that you use one of the other options.
- ♦ **Deploy System Updates Using Stages to Devices in the Management Zone:** The selected update is deployed to only the devices that have membership in one of the stages. The stages are executed one after the other; that is, a stage does not start until the previous stage completes.

For more information on stages, see the [Section 13.1.2, “Creating Deployment Stages,”](#) on page 134.

8b Click *Next* to display the following page:



8c Select one of the following options:

- ♦ **Prompt User to Reboot When Update Finishes Applying:** After the update has been applied, a request to reboot is immediately displayed. If the user initially rejects rebooting, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted. This is the default.
- ♦ **Do Not Reboot Device:** The device does not reboot; however, the user is periodically requested to reboot the device, until the device is rebooted.
- ♦ **Force Device to Reboot:** After the update has been applied, the device is automatically rebooted without user intervention, if a reboot is required by the update.

Some updates do not require a device to be rebooted after they have been deployed to a device. However, if a reboot is required to complete the update process, the deployment is not completed until the device is rebooted.

8d Click *Next*.

8e (Conditional) If you selected *Deploy System Updates to Selected Devices* in the Management Zone in **Step 8a**, the following wizard page displays:

Create System Update Deployment
Step 3: Choose the Deployment Devices and Groups

Add Remove

Name	In Folder
------	-----------

No items selected, click add to select items

<< Back Next >> Cancel

8f To add devices or groups to the deployment configuration, click *Add*, browse for and select the devices or device groups to include in the update deployment, then click *OK*.

8g Click *Next* to display the Choose the Deployment Schedule page.

8h Fill in the fields:

Schedule Type: Select one of the schedule options:

- ♦ **Now:** Immediately deploys the update when you finish the wizard.

Create System Update Deployment
Step 2: Choose the Deployment Schedule

Schedule Type:
Now

This schedule will run immediately upon the completion of the wizard.

<< Back Next >> Cancel

- ♦ **Date Specific:** Deploys the update according to the schedule that you set. The following options are displayed for the *Date Specific* option:

Create System Update Deployment
Step 4: Choose the Deployment Schedule

Schedule Type:
Date Specific

Start Date(s): 4/12/08

☐ Run event every year
☒ Process immediately if device unable to execute on schedule

Select when schedule execution should start:
☒ Start immediately at Start Time
☐ Start at a random time between Start and End Times

Start Time: 1 : 00 am End Time: 1 : 00 am

<< Back Next >> Cancel

Fill in the fields:

- ♦ **Start Date:** Select the deployment date from the calendar.
- ♦ **Run Event Every Year:** Select to deploy the update every year on the start date.

- ♦ **Process Immediately if Device Unable to Execute on Schedule:** Do not use this option for updates. It applies only to bundles that you create in ZENworks Control Center.
- ♦ **Start Immediately at Start Time:** Lets you deploy updates at the start time you specify.
- ♦ **Start at a Random Time Between Start and End Times:** Lets you deploy updates at a random time between the times you specify. Fill in the *End Time* fields.

8i Click *Next* to display the Review Deployment Options page, then review the information.

Create System Update Deployment

Step 5: Review Deployment Options

Update Name: ZCM Update 10.0.2

Deployment Type: Deploy System Updates to Selected Devices in the Management Zone

Deployment Reboot Behavior: Prompt user to reboot when update finishes applying

Deployment Schedule:


Schedule Type: Date Specific

Dates scheduled event will be performed on: 4/12/08

Start time: 1:00 AM

End time:

<< Back Finish Cancel

- 9** If satisfied, click *Finish* to start the update's deployment; otherwise, click *Back* to make changes.
- 10** (Conditional) If you chose the deployment schedule type as *Now* in **Step 8h**, the update is deployed only during the next device refresh schedule. However, if you want to immediately apply the update to the device, you must manually refresh the managed device in one of the following ways:
- ♦ Click the *Devices* tab > the *Managed* tab > *Servers* or *Workstations*, then select the check box next to the devices you want to refresh, click *Quick Tasks* > *Refresh Device*.
 - ♦ On the managed device, right-click the  icon, then click *Refresh*.

11 To observe the progress of the update deployment, do any of the following:

- ♦ In ZENworks Control Center, observe the panels on the System Updates page:
 - ♦ The Available System Updates panel automatically displays *Baselined* in the *Status* column when the deployment has completed.
 - ♦ The Deployed System Updates panel displays the update in its listing when the deployment has completed.
- ♦ On a Windows device where the update is being deployed, right-click the ZENworks icon, then select *Show Progress* to open the ZENworks Progress dialog box.

You cannot view the download progress on a Linux device because these devices are not managed in ZENworks 10 Configuration Management and do not have the ZENworks icon.

The progress of downloading the update MSI files is displayed. When it has finished, the dialog box automatically closes and the *Show Progress* option is dimmed.

After a 5-minute wait, all ZENworks services are closed on the device. Then the MSIs (for Windows) or RPMs (for Linux) are installed and the services are restarted.

12 To verify that the update was successfully deployed:

12a To verify that the MSIs or RPMs have been installed and the update process is complete, review the following log files:

Windows:

`installation_path\novell\zenworks\logs\systemupdate.log`

Linux: `/var/opt/novell/log/zenworks/SystemUpdate.log`

You can also look for the existence of the following file (the same path for both Windows and Linux):

`installation_path\novell\zenworks\work\system-update\systemupdate.ini.timestamp`

12b Test the ZENworks software on the device to ensure that it is working properly.

12c To ensure that the update has been deployed on a Windows device, do one of the following to determine whether the version number has been incremented (for example, the first update for ZENworks should change the value from 10.0.x to 10.0.2):

- ◆ Open the Windows Registry and browse to the following:

`HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE/Software/Novell`

For the *ZENworks* key, the update process should have incremented the *version* value.

- ◆ On a Windows device, review the following file:

`Installation_path\Novell\ZENworks\version.txt`

- ◆ On a Linux device, review the following file:

`/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/version.txt`

12d Repeat **Step 12a** through **Step 12c** for each test device.

13 (Conditional) If you are receiving e-mail notifications at the completion of the deployment stages and are ready to begin the next stage, go to the Deployed System Updates panel, then click *Action > Advance to Next Stage*.

14 To deploy another update, repeat from **Step 4**.

13.3.3 Starting the Pending Stage

The default stage behavior is to automatically advance through the configured stages. However, you can configure stage behavior for individual stages or for all stages.

The *Start Pending Stage* option is only available if you used the *Advance to Next Stage Manually and Notify When Complete* option to stop each stage for manual input before continuing, instead of having the stages complete automatically.

To start the pending stage:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Deploying System Updates panel, select the check boxes for an update.
- 3 Click *Action > Start Pending Stage*.

13.3.4 Rescheduling a Deployment

You can reschedule a deployment only before it starts:

- ♦ “Rescheduling a Deployment for the All Stages Status” on page 155
- ♦ “Rescheduling a Deployment for the Other Statuses” on page 155

Rescheduling a Deployment for the All Stages Status

- 1 Select the check box for an update.
Because all devices do not need to have the update deployed at the same time, you can set individual deployment schedules for the devices.
- 2 Click *Action > Reschedule Deployment* to open the Redeployment Schedule dialog box.
- 3 Either click *OK* to accept the default schedule of *Now*, or select *Date Specific* in the *Schedule Type* field, specify the new date, then click *OK*.

Rescheduling a Deployment for the Other Statuses

- 1 Select the check box for an update.
- 2 Click *Action > Reschedule Deployment*.
- 3 In the Status by Device page, select the check box for an update, then click *Reschedule Deployment*.
- 4 On the Status by Device page, select one or more devices that are listed in the *Device* column.
- 5 Click *Reschedule Devices* to open the Redeployment Schedule dialog box.
- 6 Either click *OK* to accept the default schedule of *Now*, or select *Date Specific* in the *Schedule Type* field and specify the new date, then click *OK*.

13.3.5 Bypassing Staging

You can bypass the stages at any time and immediately deploy the update to all managed devices in the Management Zone.

- 1 Select the check box for an update.
- 2 Click *Action > Bypass Stages and Apply to All Devices*.

13.3.6 Canceling a Deployment

This option is mainly for canceling a deployment that has not yet started.

If you select to apply the update only through stages, and if you cancel the update deployment, the status in the Available System Updates panel is changed to *Aborted*.

However, for an update, you can select to deploy to individual devices, as well as through stages for the other devices. Therefore, the status in the Available System Updates panel is changed to:

- ♦ *Ready* if you cancel only the staged deployment.
- ♦ *Aborted* if you cancel both the staged deployment and the deployment for individually selected devices.

To cancel a deployment:

- 1 Select the check box for an update.
- 2 Click *Action > Cancel Deployment*.

WARNING: If you cancel a deployment that is currently running (not just scheduled), all deployment actions performed up to that point cannot be reversed. There currently is no rollback option.

- 3 Click *OK* to confirm canceling the deployment.

13.3.7 Clearing an Error to Retry a Deployment

To continue with the deployment after determining that an error is not serious enough to stop the deployment:

- 1 Click *Action > Clear Error and Continue*.

13.3.8 Viewing Status by Device

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ “Understanding Device Statuses” on page 156
- ♦ “Viewing a Device’s Properties” on page 157
- ♦ “Viewing Information on a Device’s Status” on page 158
- ♦ “Toggling Ignored Devices” on page 158
- ♦ “Redeploying Updates to Devices” on page 159
- ♦ “Rescheduling Updates to Devices” on page 159
- ♦ “Refreshing Devices” on page 160

Understanding Device Statuses

The following graphic illustrates the Deploying System Updates panel on the System Updates page:

Figure 13-5 *Deploying System Updates Panel*

Deploying System Updates							
Action ▼							
<input type="checkbox"/>	Update Name	Start Schedule	Reboot Behavior	Stage	Status	Pending	Successful
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZCM Update 10.0.2	Now	Prompt User	All Devices Stage	In Process	1	0
						0	

You can click any of the underlined links to display the corresponding status of devices. For example, if you click the link in the *Pending* column, you see the status of devices on which the deployment is pending, as in the following figure:

Figure 13-6 *Device by Status Page for Devices with Pending Status*

Update for ZCM 10.0.7 - Devices with Pending Status				
Action	Device	Status	Device Type	In Folder
<input type="checkbox"/> Ignore Device	zendoc3a	Update Assigned	Server	/ devices/ servers/ zendoc3a

1 - 1 of 1 show 5 items

The possible statuses that can be viewed on this page are:

All Devices: Lists all devices that were configured to receive the selected update, regardless of status.

Pending Devices: Lists only the devices where the selected update is pending.

Successful Devices: Lists all of the devices where the selected update has been successfully deployed.

Failed Devices: Lists only the devices where the selected update failed.

Update Assigned: Lists only the devices where the selected update has been assigned.

The following table explains the column information. For some columns, you can sort the listed information by clicking a column heading. Click it again to reverse the sorting order. This page refreshes automatically to allow you to work with devices as the update is applied on them.

Column Heading	Explanation
<i>Device</i>	The device's name. Click it to display the device's properties page in ZENworks Control Center.
<i>Status</i>	<p>The current update deployment status for the device. Click the status item to view information about the status.</p> <p>For more information on the individual statuses, see Section 13.6, "Update Statuses," on page 163.</p>
<i>Device Type</i>	Whether the device is a server or workstation.
<i>In Folder</i>	Displays the ZENworks Control Center folder where the device's ZENworks object resides.

Viewing a Device's Properties

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Deploying System Updates panel, click an underlined link in the *Update Name*, *Stage*, *Pending*, *Successful*, or *Failed* column to display the appropriate Status by Device page.

For example, if you click the link in the *Pending* column, you see the status of devices on which the deployment is pending, as in the following figure:

Update for ZCM 10.0.7 - Devices with Pending Status				
Action ▾	Device	Status	Device Type	In Folder
<input type="checkbox"/>	zendoc3a	Update Assigned	Server	/ devices/ servers/ zendoc3a

1 - 1 of 1 show 5 items

- 3 Click the underlined link in the *Device* column to display the device's properties.

Viewing Information on a Device's Status

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Deploying System Updates panel, click an underlined link in the *Update Name*, *Stage*, *Pending*, *Successful*, or *Failed* column to display the appropriate Status by Device page.

For example, if you click the link in the *Pending* column, you see the status of devices on which the deployment is pending, as in the following figure:

Update for ZCM 10.0.7 - Devices with Pending Status				
Action ▾	Device	Status	Device Type	In Folder
<input type="checkbox"/>	zendoc3a	Update Assigned	Server	/ devices/ servers/ zendoc3a

1 - 1 of 1 show 5 items

- 3 Click the underlined link in the *Status* column to display status information about the device.

Toggling Ignored Devices

Ignoring a device is helpful if an update fails on a device and you want to continue with the deployment without resolving the error. For example, if a device is offline, you might want to ignore that device so that the deployment can continue.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Deploying System Updates panel, click an underlined link in the *Update Name*, *Stage*, *Pending*, *Successful*, or *Failed* column to display the appropriate Status by Device page.

For example, if you click the link in the *Pending* column, you see the status of devices on which the deployment is pending, as in the following figure:

Update for ZCM 10.0.7 - Devices with Pending Status				
Action ▾	Device	Status	Device Type	In Folder
<input type="checkbox"/>	zendoc3a	Update Assigned	Server	/ devices/ servers/ zendoc3a

1 - 1 of 1 show 5 items

- 3 Click the check box next to one or more devices.
- 4 Click *Action > Toggle Ignored Devices*.

The options available from the *Action* menu vary, depending on whether you are viewing the All Assigned Devices Status panel, the Devices with Pending Status panel, or the Devices with Failed Status panel. If you are viewing the Devices with Success Status panel, no options are available.

Redeploying Updates to Devices

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Deploying System Updates panel, click an underlined link in the *Update Name*, *Stage*, *Pending*, *Successful*, or *Failed* column to display the appropriate Status by Device page.

For example, if you click the link in the *Pending* column, you see the status of devices on which the deployment is pending, as in the following figure:

Update for ZCM 10.0.7 - Devices with Pending Status				
Action ▾				
<input type="checkbox"/> Ignore Device	Device ▲	Status	Device Type	In Folder
<input type="checkbox"/>	zendoc3a	Update Assigned	Server	/ devices / servers / zendoc3a
1 - 1 of 1				
show 5 ▼ items				

- 3 Select the check box next to one or more devices.
- 4 Click *Action > Redeploy Update to Devices*.

The options available from the *Action* menu vary, depending on whether you are viewing the All Assigned Devices Status panel, the Devices with Pending Status panel, or the Devices with Failed Status panel. If you are viewing the Devices with Success Status panel, no options are available.

Rescheduling Updates to Devices

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Deploying System Updates panel, click an underlined link in the *Update Name*, *Stage*, *Pending*, *Successful*, or *Failed* column to display the appropriate Status by Device page.

For example, if you click the link in the *Pending* column, you see the status of devices on which the deployment is pending, as in the following figure:

Update for ZCM 10.0.7 - Devices with Pending Status				
Action ▾				
<input type="checkbox"/> Ignore Device	Device ▲	Status	Device Type	In Folder
<input type="checkbox"/>	zendoc3a	Update Assigned	Server	/ devices / servers / zendoc3a
1 - 1 of 1				
show 5 ▼ items				

- 3 Select the check box next to one or more devices.
- 4 Click *Action > Reschedule Devices*.

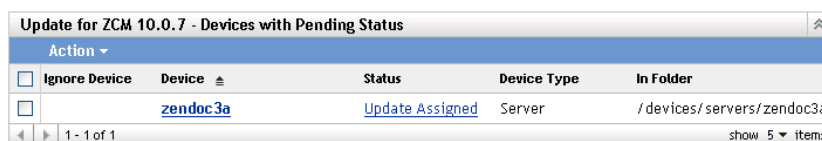
The options available from the *Action* menu vary, depending on whether you are viewing the All Assigned Devices Status panel, the Devices with Pending Status panel, or the Devices with Failed Status panel. If you are viewing the Devices with Success Status panel, no options are available.

The *Reschedule Devices* option displays only when the update deployment is scheduled. If the update has a schedule of *Now*, this option is not available.

Refreshing Devices

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Deploying System Updates panel, click an underlined link in the *Update Name*, *Stage*, *Pending*, *Successful*, or *Failed* column to display the appropriate Status by Device page.

For example, if you click the link in the *Pending* column, you see the status of devices on which the deployment is pending, as in the following figure:



Action	Device	Status	Device Type	In Folder
<input type="checkbox"/>	zendoc3a	Update Assigned	Server	/ devices / servers / zendoc3a

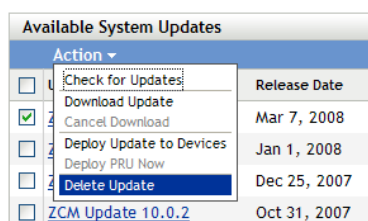
- 3 Select the check box next to one or more devices.
- 4 Click *Action > Refresh Device*.

The options available from the *Action* menu vary, depending on whether you are viewing the All Assigned Devices Status panel, the Devices with Pending Status panel, or the Devices with Failed Status panel. If you are viewing the Devices with Success Status panel, no options are available.

13.4 Deleting Updates

You can clear an update that fails to download, or an update that you do not want to deploy.

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Available System Updates panel, select the check boxes for one or more updates.
- 3 Click *Action > Delete Update*.



	Release Date
<input type="checkbox"/> Check for Updates	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Download Update	Mar 7, 2008
<input type="checkbox"/> Cancel Download	
<input type="checkbox"/> Deploy Update to Devices	Jan 1, 2008
<input type="checkbox"/> Deploy PRU Now	
<input type="checkbox"/> Delete Update	Dec 25, 2007
<input type="checkbox"/> ZCM Update 10.0.2	Oct 31, 2007

The update is deleted from the list and all downloaded files are removed. However, if the deleted update is still available on the update server, it is displayed in the list again for possible downloading the next time that you check for updates.

13.5 Reviewing the Content of an Update

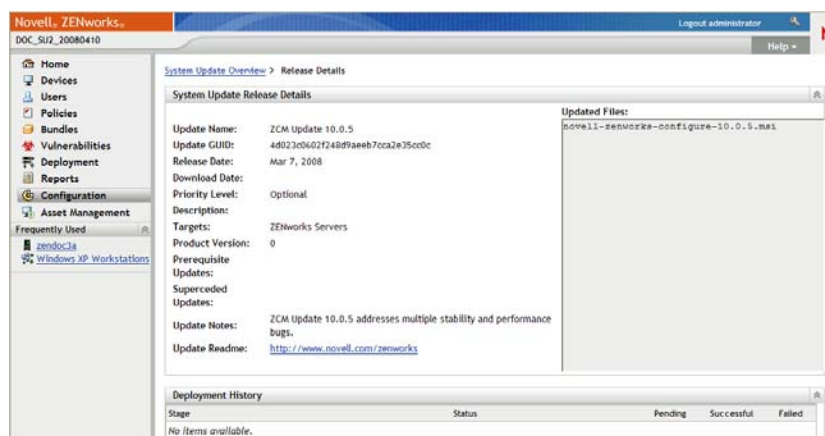
You might want to review the content of an update for the following reasons:

- ♦ To determine whether to download the update
- ♦ To determine whether to deploy a downloaded update

- ♦ To review what was deployed by the update
- ♦ To review the history of the update

To review the content:

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click *Configuration* in the left pane, then click the *System Updates* tab.
- 2 In the Available System Updates panel, click an update name in the *Update Name* column to display the Release Details page:



The Release Details page contains the following information:

- ♦ [Section 13.5.1, “Update Release Details,” on page 161](#)
- ♦ [Section 13.5.2, “Deployment History,” on page 162](#)

13.5.1 Update Release Details

Table 13-1 Information from the System Update Release Details panel

Column Heading	Explanation
<i>Update Name</i>	Displays the name of the update, which is created by Novell.
<i>Update GUID</i>	Displays the update's GUID.
<i>Release Date</i>	Displays the date the update was released by Novell.
<i>Download Date</i>	Displays the date you downloaded the content of the update, including all files necessary to install the update.
<i>Priority Level</i>	<p>Displays the relative importance of the update's content to your ZENworks installation. Some possible entries:</p> <p>OPTIONAL: Not required for normal operation of ZENworks 10 Configuration Management.</p> <p>MANDATORY: A required update that must be applied.</p>
<i>Description</i>	Displays brief information about the purpose of the update and its content.

Column Heading	Explanation
<i>Targets</i>	Indicates whether the target devices are Primary Servers only, all managed devices, or servers with ZENworks roles.
<i>Product Version</i>	The version of ZENworks in this update.
<i>Prerequisite Updates</i>	Displays any updates that are required for this update.
<i>Superseded Updates</i>	Displays any updates that the current update supersedes.
<i>Update Notes</i>	Displays brief information about important issues related to the update.
<i>Update Readme</i>	Information pertinent to deploying the update, such as last-minute instructions. Click this entry to open the Readme.
<i>Updated Files</i>	Lists all of the files contained in the update that will be applied to update your ZENworks software.

13.5.2 Deployment History

This Deployment History panel displays a current snapshot of the history for the selected update. It does not automatically refresh its content.

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [“Understanding Deployment History Details” on page 162](#)
- ♦ [“Performing Deployment History Tasks” on page 163](#)

Understanding Deployment History Details

Table 13-2 *Columns for the Deployment History Details panel*

Column Heading	Explanation
<i>Stage</i>	<p>Indicates the deployment method used. The possible entries are:</p> <p>stage_name: The update was deployed to the managed devices that are members of the stage that is listed.</p> <p>Selected Devices Stage: The update was deployed to selected managed devices in the Management Zone that are not members of a stage.</p> <p>All Devices Stage: The update was deployed to all managed devices in the Management Zone that are not members of a stage.</p>
<i>Status</i>	<p>Indicates the status of the update that was successfully deployed, such as <i>Applied</i> or <i>Baselined</i>.</p> <p>In Process: The update is currently being deployed to the members of the stage.</p> <p>For more information on the individual statuses, see Section 13.6, “Update Statuses,” on page 163.</p>

Column Heading	Explanation
<i>Pending</i>	<p>Displays the number of devices for which the update deployment process is pending. A device can be pending if it is a member of a stage when stages are not automatically started after another stage completes.</p> <p>Click the number to view the Status by Device page, which displays the devices that have the deployment of the update pending.</p>
<i>Successful</i>	<p>Displays the number of devices for which the update deployment process has completed.</p> <p>Click the number to view the Status by Device page, with the devices displayed that successfully received the update.</p>
<i>Failed</i>	<p>Displays the number of devices for which the update deployment process has failed.</p> <p>Click the number to view the Status by Device page, which displays the devices that failed to receive the update.</p> <p>For failed deployments, you have the option of ignoring the error and continuing, or you can redeploy the update if the error has been resolved.</p>

Performing Deployment History Tasks

Table 13-3 *Tasks for Evaluating an Update's Deployment History*

Task	Steps	Additional Details
View which devices have their deployment pending	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In the Deployment Stages panel, click the number in the <i>Pending</i> column. 2. On the Status by Device page, review the information. 	Displays devices where the deployment of the update is pending.
View the devices where deployment was successful	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In the Deployment Stages panel, click the number in the <i>Successful</i> column. 2. On the Status by Device page, review the information. 	Displays devices that have had the selected update successfully applied.
View which devices had their deployment fail	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In the Deployment Stages panel, click the number in the <i>Failed</i> column. 2. On the Status by Device page, review the information. 	<p>Displays devices where the update deployment failed.</p> <p>In order to consider a deployment successfully finished when there are failed devices, the failed devices should either be ignored, or the error should be fixed before you redeploy the update to those failed devices.</p>

13.6 Update Statuses

The following update statuses can be displayed in the *Status* column of several System Update panels in ZENworks Control Center:

Aborted: The deployment of the update was stopped, such as by selecting *Action > Cancel Deployment*.

Applied: The update was successfully applied to the managed devices.

Available: Updates with this status have downloaded the information about the update, which you can view by clicking the update name in the *Update ID* column.

Awaiting Reboot: The device is waiting for you to manually reboot after the update has been applied.

Baselined: The update files have been placed in the download directory, so that when managed devices register with the server they can obtain the latest updates.

Canceled: Displays after you select *Action > Cancel Download* and the download or deployment was successfully canceled.

Canceling: Temporarily displays after you select *Action > Cancel Download*.

Deploying: The update is currently being deployed. See [Deploying System Updates](#) for further deployment information and for actions that you can take on an update that is being deployed.

Downloaded: You have downloaded the update's content and it is ready for deployment. See [Deploying System Updates](#) for further deployment information and for actions that you can take on an update that has been deployed.

Downloading: Displays a percentage of completion during the downloading process. This status changes to *Downloaded* when the download is complete.

Error: The stage failed to complete because of an error with one or more of the devices being updated. You can select to ignore the error and continue, or to fix the error before continuing. This status can also indicate an error in downloading the update.

In Process: That the current stage is active.

Installing Update: The update is currently being installed on the device.

Ready: The current stage is ready to start.

Reboot in Process: Rebooting the device is in process.

Reboot Process Canceled: Rebooting the device after the update was applied was canceled.

Scheduled: The update has a schedule defined for it. See [Deploying System Updates](#) when creating the deployment in the Create System Update Deployment Wizard. You can alter the update's schedule by using the *Action > Reschedule Deployment* option.

Stage Complete: The stage has completed.

Status Unknown: The status of updates for the device is unknown.

Update Aborted: The update was canceled for the device.

Update Completed: Installation of the update has been completed on the device.

Update Completed with Errors: Installation of the update has been completed on the device, but there were errors. Check the update log for details.

Update Assigned: The update has been assigned to the device.

Zone Pre-Update Actions: Actions for the Management Zone are taking place before the server update begins.

Zone Post-Update Actions: Actions for the Management Zone are taking place after the server upgrade finishes.

Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management allows you to back up and restore the embedded Sybase® SQL Anywhere database by using the zman command line utility. To back up and restore Remote Sybase SQL Anywhere, Oracle, or Microsoft SQL Server® databases, refer to their documentation.

IMPORTANT: If you plan to back up the ZENworks Server that hosts the ZENworks database, you must ensure that the ZENworks database is backed up at least once before backing up the ZENworks Server (which only needs to be done one time). You can also back up the ZENworks database on a regular basis. However, you can back up the server and the database in any order.

When restoring the ZENworks Server and the database, you must first restore the ZENworks Server, then continue with restoring the latest backed-up ZENworks database. For more information about backing up and restoring the ZENworks Server, see [Chapter 15, “ZENworks Server and Certificate Authority Backup and Restore,”](#) on page 191.

ZENworks 10 Configuration Management also allows you to migrate the data from the Sybase SQL Anywhere database to an Oracle® database.

Review the following sections for detailed information:

- ♦ [Section 14.1, “Retrieving and Storing the Credentials of the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,”](#) on page 168
- ♦ [Section 14.2, “Changing the Ports Used by the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,”](#) on page 168
- ♦ [Section 14.3, “Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,”](#) on page 169
- ♦ [Section 14.4, “Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,”](#) on page 175
- ♦ [Section 14.5, “Moving the Data from an Embedded Sybase Database to an External Sybase Database,”](#) on page 177
- ♦ [Section 14.6, “Moving the Data from One External Sybase Database to another External Sybase Database,”](#) on page 178
- ♦ [Section 14.7, “Migrating the Data from an Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere to an External Oracle Database,”](#) on page 180
- ♦ [Section 14.8, “Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New MS SQL Database Containing Data Moved from Another MS SQL Database,”](#) on page 187
- ♦ [Section 14.9, “Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New Oracle Database Containing Data Moved from Another Oracle Database,”](#) on page 188

14.1 Retrieving and Storing the Credentials of the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database

If you have installed ZENworks 10 Configuration Management with the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database that is bundled with ZENworks, we recommend that you store the credentials of the database after the installation for future use.

- 1 Retrieve the credentials of the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database by entering one of the following commands at the server prompt:

```
zman database-get-credentials
```

Or

```
zman dgc
```

The credentials are displayed on the console.

For more information about `zman`, view the `zman` man page (`man zman`) on the server or see “`zman(1)`” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

- 2 Copy the credentials and save them in a file.

To retrieve and store the credentials of Remote Sybase SQL Anywhere, Oracle, or Microsoft SQL Server databases, refer to their documentation.

14.2 Changing the Ports Used by the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database

Sybase SQL Anywhere uses port 2638 by default. You can change the port on which the database runs.

- 1 In the `zenworks_database.conf` file, specify the new port number on which the server listens to.

The `zenworks_database.conf` file is located in `%ZENWORKS_HOME%\conf` on Windows and in `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks` on Linux.

- 2 In the `zdm.xml` file on all the Primary Servers, specify the new port number in the following entry:

```
<entry key="Port">2638</entry>
```

By default, the entry lists the default port number, 2638.

The `zdm.xml` file is located in `%ZENWORKS_HOME%\conf\datamodel` on Windows and in `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel` on Linux.

- 3 (Conditional) If the ZENworks Reporting Server is installed on the Primary Server, add the new port number to the ODBC data information:

- ♦ **On a Windows server:** Do the following:

1. From the desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings*, click *Control Panel*, then double-click *ODBC Data Source*

The ODBC Data Source Administrator window is displayed.

2. Click the *System DSN* tab.
3. Double-click *ZENworks Datastore*.

The ODBC Configuration window is displayed.

4. Click the *Networks* tab.
 5. In the *Select the Network Protocols and Options* panel, change the value of the TCP/IP port number (by default, it is 2638) to the port number specified in `zenworks_database.conf` (the new number you specified in **Step 1**).
- ♦ **On a Linux server:** In the `/opt/novell/zenworks/share/boe/bobje/odbc.ini` file, change the value of TCP/IP to the port number specified in `zenworks_database.conf` (the new number you specified in **Step 1**).
- 4 Restart the database service, ZENServer, and ZENLoader services on all Primary servers:
- ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop Start menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Restart the following services: *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore*, *Novell ZENworks Loader Service*, and *Novell ZENworks Server*.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter the following commands in the order given:
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/novell-zenmntr stop`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/novell-zenserver stop`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/novell-zenloader stop`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/sybase-asa restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/novell-zenserver start`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/novell-zenloader start`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/novell-zenmntr start`

Even though the TCP and UDP ports are changed from 2638, the database server also listens on UDP port 2638. For more information, see the [Sybase database documentation \(http://www.ianywhere.com/developer/product_manuals/sqlanywhere/1001/en/html/dbdaen10/da-serverport-network-conparm.html\)](http://www.ianywhere.com/developer/product_manuals/sqlanywhere/1001/en/html/dbdaen10/da-serverport-network-conparm.html).

14.3 Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database

The embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database can be backed up to a directory on the local machine or to a network location.

- ♦ **Section 14.3.1, “Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database on a Windows or Linux Server,” on page 170**
- ♦ **Section 14.3.2, “Backing up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Running on a Windows Server to a Network Location on a Remote Windows Machine,” on page 171**
- ♦ **Section 14.3.3, “Backing up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Running on a Linux Server to a Network Location on a Remote Linux Machine,” on page 173**

14.3.1 Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database on a Windows or Linux Server

- 1 Store the ZENworks administrator name and password by entering the following command at the command prompt:

```
zman admin-store-credential administrator
```

If you do not store the credentials, you must enter the ZENworks administrator name and password for each zman command.

You can back up the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database immediately or schedule the backup to run at a specific time. To back up the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database immediately, continue with **Step 2**. To schedule the backup to run at a specific time, skip to **Step 3**.

- 2 To immediately back up the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database to a directory on the database server, enter the following command at the command prompt:

```
zman database-backup  
complete_path_of_the_backup_directory_on_database_server
```

For example, to back up the database to the `c:\dbbackup` directory on a Windows database server, execute `zman database-backup c:\dbbackup`. To back up the database to the `/root/dbBackup` directory on a Linux database server, execute `zman database-backup /root/dbBackup`.

- 3 To schedule the backup to run at a specific time every day or on specific days of a month, you need to create a schedule file and run it.

- 3a Create a schedule file, `backupschedule.sql`, with the following contents:

```
CREATE EVENT backup_schedule_name  
  
SCHEDULE  
  
specify_the_schedule
```

A sample schedule file to back up the database at a 11 P.M. every day is as follows:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBBackup  
  
SCHEDULE  
  
START TIME '11:00 PM' EVERY 24 HOURS
```

A sample schedule file to back up the database at 1:00 A.M on the first, second, third and fourth days of the month is as follows:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBBackup1  
  
SCHEDULE  
  
START TIME '1:00 AM'  
  
ON (1,2,3,4)
```

Sample schedule files are available in the

ZENworks_Installation_directory:\Novell\Zenworks\share\zman\
samples\database directory on a Windows server, and in the /opt/novell/
zenworks/share/zman/samples/database directory on a Linux server.

3b Enter the following command at the command prompt:

```
zman database-backup complete_path_of_the_backup_directory  
c:\backUpSchedule.sql -d SQL_function_call
```

For example, to back up the database to the c:\dbbackup\day_of_the_week
directory on a Windows server, enter the following command:

```
zman database-backup c:\dbbackup c:\backUpSchedule.sql -d  
"DAYNAME(today())"
```

For more information about this command, view the zman man page (man zman) on the
device, or see **zman(1)** in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line
Utilities Reference*.

4 Clear the credentials stored in **Step 1** by entering the following command at the command
prompt:

```
zman admin-clear-credential
```

According to the backup schedule, the zenworks_zone_name.db database file and the
zenworks_zone_name.log transaction log file are created in the database backup directory.

In ZENworks 10 Configuration Management (10.1) and Update for ZENworks 10 Configuration
Management (10.1.1), the old transaction log is not deleted after the database is backed up. The log
file is renamed with the timestamp when it was last backed up. The timestamp is the format
YYMMDD. For example, if the transaction log was last backed up on September 23, 2008, the log
file is renamed to 080923*.log. However, the log file is not required and can be manually
deleted from the %ZENWORKS_HOME%\database directory on Windows or the /var/opt/
novell/zenworks/database directory on Linux to recover disk space. The log file is
automatically deleted in Update for ZENworks 10 Configuration Management (10.1.2) or later.

14.3.2 Backing up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Running on a Windows Server to a Network Location on a Remote Windows Machine

To back up an embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database that is installed and running on a
Windows server to a network location on another Windows machine, you need a local machine and
a remote machine. The local machine is a Windows server with the ZENworks server components
and the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database installed. The remote machine is a Windows
machine with the network location to which you want to back up the database.

1 Perform the following steps on the local machine:

1a Create an administrative user and specify a password.

For example, you could specify the administrative username as Administrator and
the password as novell.

1b From the desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings*, click *Control Panel*, double-click
Administrative Tools, then double-click *Services*.

1c Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Datastore* service, then click *Properties*.

- 1d** Click the *Log On* tab.
- 1e** Select *This account*, then specify the name and the password of the administrative user created in **Step 1a**.
For example, specify the user as `Administrator` and the password as `novell`.
- 1f** Click *OK*.
- 2** Perform the following steps on the remote machine with the network location where you want to save the backup:
 - 2a** Create an account with the same credentials as the user you created in **Step 1a**.
For example, specify user as `Administrator` and password as `novell`.
 - 2b** Provide Read/Write permission on the network location to the user.
To immediately back up the database, continue with **Step 3**. To schedule the backup to run at a specific time every day or on specific days of a month, skip to **Step 4**.
- 3** To immediately back up the database to the network location on the remote machine, enter the following command at the command prompt:

```
zman database-backup
\\IP_address_of_the_remote_machine\backup_directory
```

Where `\\IP_address_of_the_remote_machine\backup_directory` is the network location on the remote machine.

- 4** To schedule the backup:
 - 4a** Create a schedule file, `backupschedule.sql`, with the following contents:

```
CREATE EVENT backup_schedule_name
SCHEDULE
specify_the_schedule
```

A sample schedule file to back up the database at a 11 P.M. every day is as follows:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBBackup
SCHEDULE
START TIME '11:00 PM' EVERY 24 HOURS
```

A sample schedule file to back up the database at 1:00 A.M on the first, second, third, and fourth days of the month is as follows:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBBackup1
SCHEDULE
START TIME '1:00 AM'
ON (1,2,3,4)
```

Sample schedule files are available in the
`ZENworks_Installation_directory\Novell\Zenworks\share\zman\samples\database` directory.

- 4b** Execute the following command at the command prompt:

```
zman database-backup
\\IP_address_of_the_remote_machine\backup_directory
c:\backUpSchedule.sql -d SQL_function_call
```

Where `\\IP_address_of_the_remote_machine\backup_directory` is the network location on the remote machine. For more information about this command, view the `zman` man page (`man zman`) on the device, or see [zman\(1\)](#) in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

According to the backup schedule, `zenworks_zone_name.db` and `zenworks_zone_name.log` are created in the network location on the remote machine. The backed-up database is stored in `zenworks_zone_name.db`. The result of the database backup is logged in `zenworks_zone_name.log`.

14.3.3 Backing up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database Running on a Linux Server to a Network Location on a Remote Linux Machine

To back up the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database that is installed and running on a Linux server to a network location on a Linux machine, you need a local machine and a remote machine. The local machine is a Linux server with the ZENworks server components and the embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database installed. The remote machine is a Linux machine with the network location to which you want to back up the database. For more information, see [Section 14.4](#), “Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,” on page 175

1 Create a Samba share on the remote machine:

- 1a** Create a user by entering the `useradd user_name` command at the command prompt.
- 1b** Log in to the remote machine with the username created in [Step 1a](#), and set the password by using the `passwd specify_the_password` command.

1c Create a directory to save the database backup.

For example, create a directory with the name `backup`.

1d Open the Samba server settings by running the `yast2 samba-server` command.

1e Click the *Shares* tab, then click *Add* to specify the share name and the path to the backup directory created in [Step 1c](#).

For example, specify the sharename as `dbbackup`.

1f Select the `dbbackup` share, click *Edit*, then add the following attributes:

- ♦ `create mask = 0640`
- ♦ `force user = user_name_created_in_Step 1a`
- ♦ `guest ok = yes`
- ♦ `public = yes`
- ♦ `wide links = no`
- ♦ `writable = yes`

2 Create a directory on the local machine.

For example, create a directory with the name `zenworks_dbbackup` in `/root`.

3 Mount the Samba share on the `zenworks_dbbackup` directory on the local machine by entering the following command at the command prompt:

```
mount -t smbfs //IP_address of the remote_machine/share_name -o
username=user_name_specified_in_Step1a,password=password_
specified_in_Step_1b
local_directory_name_with_complete_path_created_in_Step2
```

For example:

```
mount -t smbfs //IP_address of the remote_machine/dbbackup -o
username=user_name_specified_in_Step1a,password=password_
specified_in_Step_1b /root/zenworks_dbbackup
```

To immediately back up the database, continue with **Step 4**. To schedule the backup to run at a specific time every day or on specific days of a month, skip to **Step 5**.

- 4** To immediately back up the database to the network location on the remote machine, enter the following command at the command prompt:

```
zman database-backup database_backup_directory
```

For example:

```
zman database-backup /root/zenworks_dbbackup
```

- 5** To schedule the backup:

5a Create a schedule file, `backupschedule.sql`, with the following contents:

```
CREATE EVENT backup_schedule_name
```

```
SCHEDULE
```

```
specify_the_schedule
```

A sample schedule file to back up the database at a 11 P.M. every day is as follows:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBBackup
```

```
SCHEDULE
```

```
START TIME '11:00 PM' EVERY 24 HOURS
```

A sample schedule file to back up the database at 1:00 A.M on the first, second, third, and fourth days of the month is as follows:

```
CREATE EVENT ZENDBBackup1
```

```
SCHEDULE
```

```
START TIME '1:00 AM'
```

```
ON (1,2,3,4)
```

Sample schedule files are available in the

`ZENworks_Installation_directory:\Novell\Zenworks\share\zman\samples\database` directory.

- 5b** Enter the following command at the command prompt:

```
zman database-backup database_backup_directory
c:\backUpSchedule.sql -d SQL_function_call
```

For example:

```
zman database-backup /root/zenworks_dbbackup  
c:\backUpSchedule.sql -d SQL_function_call
```

For more information about this command, view the `zman` man page (`man zman`) on the device, or see **zman(1)** in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

According to the backup schedule, `zenworks_zone_name.db` and `zenworks_zone_name.log` are created in the network location on the remote machine (`/root/zenworks_dbbackup`). The backed-up database is stored in `zenworks_zone_name.db`. The result of the database backup is logged in `zenworks_zone_name.log`.

14.4 Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database

The following sections provide information on restoring the backed-up embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database:

- ♦ [Section 14.4.1, “Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database on a Windows Server,” on page 175](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.4.2, “Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database on a Linux Server,” on page 176](#)

IMPORTANT: If the database is located on a ZENworks Server, you must first restore the ZENworks Server, then continue with restoring the ZENworks database. Ensure that you have backed up the ZENworks Server and the database (at least once). You can also back up the ZENworks database on a regular basis. However, you can back up the server and the database in any order. For more information about backing up and restoring the ZENworks Server, see [Chapter 15, “ZENworks Server and Certificate Authority Backup and Restore,” on page 191](#).

14.4.1 Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database on a Windows Server

- 1 At the Windows server prompt, go to `ZENworks_Installation_directory:\novell\zenworks\bin`, and enter the following command:

```
ZenworksWindowsDBRestore.bat  
ZENworks_Installation_directory:\Novell\Zenworks\Database  
c:\dbBackup\zenworks_zone_name.db  
c:\dbBackup\zenworks_zone_name.log
```

- 2 Press any key when the following message is displayed:

```
Before proceeding, make sure you have backed up any files in:<Installation  
directory>:\Novell\ZENworks\database Press any key to continue.
```

- 3 Enter Y when the following message is displayed:

The following services are dependent on the Novell ZENworks Datastore service. Stopping the Novell ZENworks Datastore service will also stop these services: Novell ZENworks Loader, Novell ZENworks Agent Service, Novell ZENworks Server. Do you want to continue this operation? (Y/N) [N]:

- 4** Press any key when the following message is displayed:

The Novell ZENworks Datastore service was stopped successfully. Press any key to continue...

- 5** Enter Yes when the following message is displayed:

Overwrite <installation
directory>:\Novell\ZENworks\database\zenworks_<zone_name>.db? (Yes/No/All)

- 6** Enter Yes when the following message is displayed:

Overwrite <installation
directory>:\Novell\ZENworks\database\zenworks_<zone_name>.log? (Yes/No/All):

The backupFile and the backupLogFile are copied to
ZENworks_Installation_directory:\Novell\ZENworks\database, and the
database is restored.

- 7** (Conditional) If you restore the database to a location other than the one mentioned in the *zenworks_installation_directory*\novell\zenworks\database\conf\zenworks_database.conf file, manually edit zenworks_database.conf to specify the new location of the database.

14.4.2 Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database on a Linux Server

- 1** Log in to the ZENworks server as root.

- 2** Change to /opt/novell/zenworks/bin, and enter the following command:

```
./ZenworksLinuxDBRestore.sh -F "/root/dbBackup/  
zenworks_zone_name.db"
```

- 3** Enter Y when the following message is displayed:

The backup database file will OVERWRITE the existing database. Is that OK? [y/n]

- 4** Enter Y when the following message is displayed:

The novell-zenloader needs to be stopped for the database restore to be performed. Would you like to proceed [y/n]?

The backup file is copied to /var/opt/novell/zenworks/database, and the restore log file to /var/opt/novell/log/zenworks/dbrestore.log. The database is restored.

14.5 Moving the Data from an Embedded Sybase Database to an External Sybase Database

ZENworks 10 Configuration Management allows you move the data from a Sybase SQL Anywhere database (embedded Sybase database) to an OEM Sybase database (external Sybase database).

- ♦ [Section 14.5.1, “Preparing to Move the Data,” on page 177](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.5.2, “Moving the Data from the Internal Sybase to the External Sybase,” on page 177](#)

14.5.1 Preparing to Move the Data

Before moving the data from an internal Sybase database to an external Sybase database, do the following:


- ♦ Make sure that ZENworks 10 Configuration Management is installed with an internal Sybase database on a Windows or Linux device.
- ♦ Install the external Sybase database. For more information on how to install an external Sybase database, see “[Installing an External ZENworks Database](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.

14.5.2 Moving the Data from the Internal Sybase to the External Sybase

- 1 On the device that has the external Sybase database installed, stop the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click *Stop*, or select the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click ■ on the toolbar.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/.sybase-asa stop`.
- 2 From the device that has the internal Sybase database installed, copy `zenworks_database.conf` and all files within the database directory to the appropriate directories on the device that has the external Sybase database.

The `zenworks_database.conf` is located in the `ZENworks_installation_path\conf\` directory on Windows and in the `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux.

The database directory is located in `ZENworks_installation_path` on Windows and in the `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux.
- 3 On the device that has the external Sybase database installed, open `zenworks_database.conf` and make sure that it contains the correct path of the database file.

- 4 On the device that has the internal Sybase database installed, edit `zdm.xml` (located in `ZENworks_installation_path\conf\datamodel` on Windows and in `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel` on Linux):
 - ♦ Change the value of the `Embedded` entry key to `false`. By default, it is `true`.
 - ♦ Set the value of the `Server` entry key to the IP address of the device that has the external Sybase database installed.
 - ♦ Make sure that the value of the `Port` entry key is the port number on which the external Sybase database is running.
- 5 On the device that has the external Sybase database installed, start the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click *Start*, or select the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click  on the toolbar.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/./sybase-asa start`.
- 6 On the device that has the internal Sybase database installed, restart the ZENworks services:
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Start the following services: *Novell ZENworks Server*, *Novell ZENworks Services Monitor*, and *Novell ZENworks Agent Service*.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter the following commands:
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenmntr restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenserver restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenloader restart`

The ZENworks Server now points to new database.

14.6 Moving the Data from One External Sybase Database to another External Sybase Database

ZENworks 10 Configuration Management allows you move the data from one OEM Sybase database (external Sybase database) to another external Sybase database.

- ♦ [Section 14.6.1, “Preparing to Move the Data,” on page 179](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.6.2, “Moving the Data from One External Sybase to Another External Sybase,” on page 179](#)

14.6.1 Preparing to Move the Data

Before moving the data from one external Sybase database to another external Sybase database, do the following:

- ♦ Make sure that ZENworks 10 Configuration Management is installed with an external Sybase database on a Windows or Linux device. The data is moved from this database to another external database. Assume that this first device is called EDB1.
- ♦ Make sure that you have another Windows or Linux device with an external Sybase database installed. Assume that this second device is called EDB2. For more information on how to install an external Sybase database, see “[Installing an External ZENworks Database](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.


14.6.2 Moving the Data from One External Sybase to Another External Sybase

In the following procedure, assume that the device you are moving the data from is EDB1 and the device you are moving the data to is EDB2.

- 1 On the EDB1 device from which you want to move the data, stop the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click *Stop*, or select the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click ■ on the toolbar.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/.sybase-asa stop`.
- 2 From the EDB1 device, copy `zenworks_database.conf` and all files within the database directory to the appropriate directories on the EDB2 device.

The `zenworks_database.conf` is located in the `ZENworks_installation_path\conf\` directory on Windows and in the `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux.

The database directory is located in `ZENworks_installation_path` by default on Windows and in the `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux.
- 3 On the EDB2 device, open `zenworks_database.conf` and make sure that it contains the correct path of the database file.
- 4 On the EDB1 device, edit `zdm.xml` (located in `ZENworks_installation_path\conf\datamodel` on Windows and in `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel` on Linux):
 - ♦ Set the value of the `Server` entry key to the IP address of the EDB2 device.
 - ♦ Make sure that the value of the `Port` entry key is the port number on which the EDB2 device is running.
- 5 On the EDB2 device, start the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service:
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.

2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Right-click the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click *Start*, or select the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service, then click  on the toolbar.
- ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/.sybase-asa start`.
- 6 On the EDB1 device, restart the ZENworks services:
- ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Start the following services: *Novell ZENworks Server*, *Novell ZENworks Services Monitor*, and *Novell ZENworks Agent Service*.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter the following commands:
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/.novell-zenmntr restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/.novell-zenserver restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/.novell-zenloader restart`

The ZENworks Server now points to new database (EDB2).

14.7 Migrating the Data from an Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere to an External Oracle Database

ZENworks 10 Configuration Management (10.1) allows you migrate the data from an internal Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere database or an external Sybase SQL Anywhere database running on a ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Primary Server to an Oracle database installed on a device that does not have the ZENworks 10 Configuration Management installed.

WARNING: If the ZENworks Reporting Server is installed on the device, then the Reporting Server does not work after migrating the database. For the Reporting Server to work, you must again install the ZENworks Reporting Server on a Primary Server on which you have installed the Oracle client after migrating the database. For more information, see [Section 14.7.3, “Post-Migration Tasks,” on page 184](#).

Review the following to migrate the database:

- ♦ [Section 14.7.1, “Preparing to Move the Data,” on page 181](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.7.2, “Migrating the Data from the Sybase SQL Anywhere Database to an Oracle Database,” on page 182](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.7.3, “Post-Migration Tasks,” on page 184](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.7.4, “Troubleshooting Database Migration,” on page 185](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.7.5, “Reverting to the Sybase Database,” on page 187](#)

14.7.1 Preparing to Move the Data

Before migrating the data from the Sybase database to Oracle database, do the following:

- ♦ Save all the reports, `rights.xml`, and `ownership.xml` by using the `report-save (rpsv) (destination folder)` command. The XML files contain rights and ownership details of all the reports.
- ♦ Make sure that the Primary Server on which the Sybase database is configured has been upgraded to ZENworks 10 Configuration Management.
- ♦ Make sure that the ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Server has an internal or external Sybase database installed.
- ♦ Make sure that the Oracle database is installed on a device that does not have the ZENworks 10 Configuration Management installed.
- ♦ Make sure that the USERS tablespace has sufficient space to create and store the ZENworks database schema. The tablespace requires a minimum of 100 MB to create ZENworks database schema without any data in it and an appropriate additional space depending upon the size of the database to be migrated. The database migration utility uses only the USERS tablespace by default. You cannot manually specify any other tablespace during the migration.
- ♦ (Conditional) If you want to migrate the database by creating a new user schema, ensure that the following additional requirements are met:
 - ♦ You must be aware of the database administrator credentials.
 - ♦ A tablespace must already exist for associating to the Oracle access user
- ♦ You can choose to migrate the database by using an existing user schema that resides on a server in your network in the following scenarios:
 - ♦ The database administrator creates a user schema with the necessary rights and you receive the credentials for that user schema from the database administrator. In this case, the database administrator credentials are not required to migrate the database.
 - ♦ You create a user schema in the Oracle database and choose to use it during the database migration.

If you want to migrate the database by using an existing user schema, ensure that the following additional requirements are met:

- ♦ Make sure that the user schema has the following rights to create the database.

```
CREATE_SESSION
CREATE_TABLE
CREATE_VIEW
CREATE_PROCEDURE
CREATE_SEQUENCE
CREATE_TRIGGER
```
- ♦ Make sure that the quota for the user schema is set to Unlimited on the USERS tablespace.
- ♦ Manually stop the ZENworks services running on all the servers in the Management Zone.

To stop the services:

 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.

2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Stop the following services: *Novell ZENworks Server*, *Novell ZENworks Services Monitor*, and *Novell ZENworks Agent Service*.
- ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter the following commands:
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenmntr stop`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenserver stop`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenloader stop`
 - ♦ Make sure that the Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore service on the Primary Server is running.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. The status of the *Novell ZENworks Embedded Datastore* service must be *Started*.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter `/etc/init.d/./sybase-asa status`.
 - ♦ (Optional) The status of database migration is logged into the `novell-zenworks-configure.log` file. By default, only the messages of the type *Info* and *Severe* are logged. If you want other message types (such as *Finer*, *Finest*, and *Warning*) also to be logged into the file, do the following in the `novell-zenworks-configure.properties` file:
 1. Set the value of `Logger.logLevel` to the appropriate message type.
For example, if you want messages of the type *Finest* to be logged:


```
#Logger.logLevel = FINEST
```
 2. Uncomment the line by removing the “#” as follows:


```
Logger.logLevel = FINEST
```

The `novell-zenworks-configure.properties` file is located in `%ZENWORKS_HOME%\conf\` on Windows and in `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/` on Linux.

14.7.2 Migrating the Data from the Sybase SQL Anywhere Database to an Oracle Database

- ♦ “Migrating the Data from the Sybase SQL Anywhere Database to an Oracle Database” on page 182
- ♦ “Resuming the Database Migration” on page 183

Migrating the Data from the Sybase SQL Anywhere Database to an Oracle Database

- 1 Make sure that all the tasks listed in Section 14.7.1, “Preparing to Move the Data,” on page 181 are completed.
- 2 Run the database migration utility.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** At the command prompt, go to `ZENworks_installation_path\bin\novell-zenworks-configure.bat` file and enter the following command:

```
novell-zenworks-configure.bat -c DBMigrateConfigureAction
```

- ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt go to /opt/novell/zenworks/bin and enter the following command:

```
novell-zenworks-configure -c DBMigrateConfigureAction
```

- 3 Enter the target database type as Oracle.
- 4 Enter the IP address or host name of the Oracle database server.
- 5 Enter the port used by the Oracle database server.
- 6 Enter the fully qualified net service name for the Oracle database.
- 7 You can choose to create a new user schema or use an existing user schema.

If you choose to create a new schema, continue with **Step 8**.

If you choose to use an existing user schema, skip to **Step 9**.

- 8 Enter the database server administrator's username and password.
- 9 Enter the schema name when prompted for the database username.
- 10 Enter the database schema password when prompted for the database user's password.
The database migration starts.
- 11 When the database migration is complete, you can check the novell-zenworks-configure.log file to see if the migration was successful. The log file is located in %ZENWORKS_HOME%\log\ on Windows and in /var/opt/novell/log/zenworks/ on Linux.
- 12 After the database is successfully migrated, continue with **Section 14.7.3, "Post-Migration Tasks,"** on page 184.

Resuming the Database Migration

If the migration of the database is stopped for any reason, the ZENworks migration utility allows you to resume the migration if the dbmigration.xml file has been created. The file is located in the ZENworks_installtion_path\bin directory on Windows, and in the /opt/novell/zenworks/bin directory on Linux.

- 1 Run the database migration utility.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** At the command prompt, go to ZENworks_installtion_path\bin\novell-zenworks-configure.bat file and enter the following command:

```
novell-zenworks-configure.bat -c DBMigrateConfigureAction
```
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, go to /opt/novell/zenworks/bin and enter the following command:

```
novell-zenworks-configure -c DBMigrateConfigureAction
```
- 2 Enter the target database type as Oracle.
- 3 Enter the IP address or host name of the Oracle database server.

NOTE: You must specify the IP address or host name of the Oracle database server used while migrating the database. For example, if you had specified the IP address of the database server while migrating the database, then you must specify the same IP address while resuming the database migration. You cannot specify the host name of the database server.

- 4 Enter the port used by the Oracle database server.
- 5 Enter the fully qualified net service name for the Oracle database.
- 6 Choose to use an existing schema.
- 7 Enter the schema name when prompted for the database username specified before stopping the database migration.
- 8 Enter the database schema password when prompted for the database user's password specified before stopping the database migration.
- 9 Choose to resume the database migration.
The database migration starts.
- 10 After the database is successfully migrated, continue with [Section 14.7.3, “Post-Migration Tasks,” on page 184.](#)

14.7.3 Post-Migration Tasks

If there is only one server in the Management Zone, all ZENworks services are automatically started after the data is successfully migrated to an Oracle database.

If there are multiple servers in the Management Zone, do the following:

- 1 On the device where you ran the migration utility, copy the following files to the appropriate directory on all the servers:

```
zdm.xml
dmaccounts.properties
dmmappings.properties
```

The files are located in the `ZENworks_installation_path\conf\datamodel` directory on Windows and in the `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel` directory on Linux.

- 2 Restart the ZENworks services.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Start the following services: *Novell ZENworks Server*, *Novell ZENworks Services Monitor*, and *Novell ZENworks Agent Service*.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter the following commands:
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenmnttr restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenserver restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenloader restart`
- 3 Migrate the ZENworks Reports from the Sybase SQL Anywhere database to an Oracle database:
 - 3a Install the Oracle client on a Primary Server that does not have an instance of the ZENworks Reporting Server.
 - 3b Install a new instance of the ZENworks Reporting Server on the device on which you have installed the Oracle client.

- 3c** Copy the reports to the device where the new instance of the Reporting Server is running. These are the ZENworks Reports that you saved before migrating them. For more information, see [Section 14.7.1, “Preparing to Move the Data,” on page 181](#).
- 3d** Publish the reports and restore the reporting rights and the ownership details of the reports by using the following command:


```
zman rpld
  path_of_directory_containing_rights.xml_and_ownership.xml
```
- 3e** Uninstall the ZENworks Reporting Server instance that was installed prior to migrating the database.

The ZENworks Server now points to the new database.

14.7.4 Troubleshooting Database Migration

- ♦ [“Troubleshooting the Java Heap Space Exception” on page 185](#)
- ♦ [“Troubleshooting an Oracle Database Crash” on page 186](#)
- ♦ [“Troubleshooting the Oracle Tablespace Issue” on page 186](#)
- ♦ [“Troubleshooting the Database Migration By Using An Existing User Schema” on page 186](#)

Troubleshooting the Java Heap Space Exception

If you encounter the Java Heap Space exception during the database migration because of low memory:

- 1** Edit the `ZENworks_installation_path\bin\novell-zenworks-configure.bat` file on Windows or `/opt/novell/zenworks/bin/novell-zenworks-configure` on Linux to change the heap space value in the following line, depending upon the RAM of the device where the migration utility is running:

```
"%JAVA_HOME%\bin\java" -Djava.library.path=%ZENLIB% -cp "%MYCP%" %DEBUG_OPTS%
%JAVA_OPTS% -Xmx128m com.novell.zenworks.configure.ConfigureLoader
%CONFIG_OPTS%
```

The heap space value is represented in megabytes (MB) within `-Xmx128m`. By default, it is 128.

For example, if the RAM of the device is 512 MB, then the line in the `novell-zenworks-configure.bat` file can be updated as follows:

```
"%JAVA_HOME%\bin\java" -Djava.library.path=%ZENLIB% -cp "%MYCP%" %DEBUG_OPTS%
%JAVA_OPTS% -Xmx512m com.novell.zenworks.configure.ConfigureLoader
%CONFIG_OPTS%
```

IMPORTANT: The heap space value must be either equivalent to or less than the RAM of the device.

- 2** At the console prompt, run the `ZENworks_installation_path\bin\novell-zenworks-configure.bat` file on Windows or `/opt/novell/zenworks/bin/novell-zenworks-configure` on Linux.
- 3** Follow the prompts.

When prompted to enter the location of the file required for resuming the migration, enter the complete path of `DBMigration.xml`. The file is located in the `ZENworks_installtion_path\bin` directory on Windows, and in the `/opt/novell/zenworks/bin` directory on Linux.

The XML file contains a list of tables and a flag indicating whether the table was successfully migrated or not. When the database migration resumes, only the tables with flag value set to false are migrated.

Troubleshooting an Oracle Database Crash

If the Oracle database crashes during the database migration:

- 1 At the console prompt, run the `ZENworks_installtion_path\bin\novell-zenworks-configure.bat` file on Windows or `/opt/novell/zenworks/bin/novell-zenworks-configure` on Linux.
- 2 Follow the prompts.

When prompted to enter the location of the file required for resuming the migration, enter the complete path of `DBMigration.xml`. The file is located in the `ZENworks_installtion_path\bin` directory on Windows, and in the `/opt/novell/zenworks/bin` directory on Linux.

The XML file contains a list of tables and a flag indicating whether the table was successfully migrated or not. When the database migration resumes, only the tables with flag value set to false are migrated.

IMPORTANT: Do not edit the contents of `DBMigration.xml`.

Troubleshooting the Oracle Tablespace Issue

If the Oracle USERS tablespace does not have sufficient space to create and store the ZENworks database schema, the database migration fails with the following error messages while trying to create the tables:

```
SEVERE: Terminating the database migration...
SEVERE: An error has occurred while migrating the database.
```

To resolve this issue, the Oracle database administrator must increase the size of the USERS tablespace. Ensure that the tablespace has a minimum of 100 MB to create ZENworks database schema without any data in it and an appropriate additional space depending upon the size of the database to be migrated.

Troubleshooting the Database Migration By Using An Existing User Schema

If you choose to migrate the database by using an existing user schema, the database migration utility creates the ZENworks database but it might fail to migrate the data.

To resolve this issue, do the following:

- 1 Make sure that the ZENworks tables, views, and user sequence are deleted from the newly created ZENworks database by the database administrator. Later on, clear the `user_recyclebin` database table.
- 2 Start the database migration again by using the same user schema. For more information, see [Section , “Migrating the Data from the Sybase SQL Anywhere Database to an Oracle Database,” on page 182.](#)

14.7.5 Reverting to the Sybase Database

If you want to return to using the Sybase database:

- 1 On the device where you run the migration utility, rename the following files:

`zdm.xml.bak` to `zdm.xml`

`dmaccounts.properties.bak` to `dmaccounts.properties`

`dmmappings.properties.bak` to `dmmappings.properties`

The files are located in the `ZENworks_installation_path\conf\datamodel` directory on Windows and in the `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel` directory on Linux.

- 2 Restart all the ZENworks Services:

- ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:

1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
3. Start the following services: *Novell ZENworks Server*, *Novell ZENworks Services Monitor*, and *Novell ZENworks Agent Service*.

- ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter the following commands:

- ♦ `/etc/init.d/.novell-zenmnttr restart`
- ♦ `/etc/init.d/.novell-zenserver restart`
- ♦ `/etc/init.d/.novell-zenloader restart`

14.8 Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New MS SQL Database Containing Data Moved from Another MS SQL Database

If you move the data from one MS SQL database to another MS SQL database, the ZENworks Server must be configured to point to the new MS SQL database.

The following sections provide detailed information:

- ♦ [Section 14.8.1, “Preparing to Move the Data,” on page 188](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.8.2, “Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New MS SQL Database,” on page 188](#)

14.8.1 Preparing to Move the Data

Before configuring the server to point the new MS SQL database, do the following:

- ♦ Make sure that ZENworks 10 Configuration Management is installed (on Windows or Linux) with an MS SQL database. The data is migrated from this database to another MS SQL database. Assume that this device is called MSDB1.
- ♦ Make sure that you have another Windows device with an MS SQL database installed. Assume that this device is called MSDB2. For more information on how to install an MS SQL database, see “[Installing an External ZENworks Database](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.
- ♦ Move the data from MSDB1 to MSDB2. For more information about moving the data, see the MS SQL database documentation.

14.8.2 Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New MS SQL Database

To configure the ZENworks Server to point to the new database (MSDB2):

- 1 On the MSDB1 device, edit `zdm.xml` (located in `ZENworks_installation_path\conf\datamodel` on Windows and in `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel` on Linux) to do the following:
 - ♦ Make sure that the value of the `Port` entry key is the port number on which the MS SQL database is running.
 - ♦ Set the value of the `Server` entry key to the IP address of the MSDB2 device.
 - ♦ Set the value of the `Database` entry key to path of the database directory of the MSDB2 device.
- 2 On the MSDB1 device, restart the ZENworks services.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Start the following services: *Novell ZENworks Server*, *Novell ZENworks Services Monitor*, and *Novell ZENworks Agent Service*.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter the following commands:
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenmntr restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenserver restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenloader restart`

14.9 Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New Oracle Database Containing Data Moved from Another Oracle Database

If you move the data from one Oracle database to another Oracle database, the ZENworks Server must be configured to point to the new Oracle database.

The following sections provide detailed information:

- ♦ [Section 14.9.1, “Preparing to Move the Data,” on page 189](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.9.2, “Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New Oracle Database,” on page 189](#)

14.9.1 Preparing to Move the Data

Before configuring the server to point the new Oracle database, do the following:

- ♦ Make sure that ZENworks 10 Configuration Management is installed (on Windows or Linux) with an Oracle database. The data is migrated from this database to another Oracle database. Assume that this device is called ORDB1.
- ♦ Make sure that you have another Windows device with an Oracle database installed with the same database credentials as the ORDB1. Assume that this device is called ORDB2. For more information on how to install an Oracle database, see “[Installing an External ZENworks Database](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.
- ♦ Move the data from ORDB1 to ORDB2. For more information about moving the data, see the Oracle database documentation.

14.9.2 Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New Oracle Database

To configure the ZENworks Server to point to the new Oracle database (ORDB2):

- 1 On the ORDB1 device, edit `zdm.xml` (located in `ZENworks_installation_path\conf\datamodel` on Windows and in `/etc/opt/novell/zenworks/datamodel` on Linux) to do the following:
 - ♦ Make sure that the value of the `Port` entry key is the port number on which the Oracle database is running.
 - ♦ Set the value of the `Server` entry key to the IP address of the ORDB2 device.
 - ♦ Set the value of the `Database` entry key to net service name of the Oracle database installed on the ORDB2 device.
- 2 On the ORDB1 device, restart the ZENworks services.
 - ♦ **On Windows:** Do the following:
 1. From the Windows desktop *Start* menu, click *Settings > Control Panel*.
 2. Double-click *Administrative Tools > Services*.
 3. Start the following services: *Novell ZENworks Server*, *Novell ZENworks Services Monitor*, and *Novell ZENworks Agent Service*.
 - ♦ **On Linux:** At the console prompt, enter the following commands:
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenmntr restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenserver restart`
 - ♦ `/etc/init.d/./novell-zenloader restart`

ZENworks Server and Certificate Authority Backup and Restore

15

Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management allows you to back up and restore the configuration files for a ZENworks Server. This enables you to maintain a ZENworks Server's identity and configuration if a server fails or if you need to upgrade to new server hardware.

Only the configuration files are backed up. The content repository (bundle, policy, and image files) is not backed up. You must do this manually if you only have one Primary Server in the Management Zone. If you have two or more Primary Servers, their copies of the repository are your backup because by default they all maintain the same repository content.

In addition, if you are backing up the ZENworks Server that hosts the ZENworks database, the ZENworks database is not backed up. Therefore, before backing up the ZENworks Server (which only needs to be done one time), you must ensure to back up the ZENworks database at least once. You can also back up the ZENworks database on a regular basis. However, you can back up the server and the database in any order. For information about backing up the database, see [Chapter 14, "Database Maintenance," on page 167](#).

IMPORTANT: When restoring the ZENworks Server and the database, you must first restore the ZENworks Server, then continue with restoring the latest backed-up ZENworks database.

The following sections provide more information about backing up and restoring a ZENworks Server and Certificate Authority:

- ♦ [Section 15.1, "Backing Up a ZENworks Server," on page 191](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.2, "Restoring a ZENworks Server," on page 192](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.3, "Backing Up the Certificate Authority," on page 193](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.4, "Restoring the Certificate Authority," on page 193](#)

15.1 Backing Up a ZENworks Server

When you back up a ZENworks Server using a `zman` command, all files in the `Novell\ZENworks\conf` directory on a Windows server or the `etc/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on a Linux server are stored in an encrypted backup file in a location that you specify. You must then manually back up your content repository and your database if it is hosted on that server.

- 1 (Conditional) If the server you are backing up hosts the zone's ZENworks database, manually back up the database file to a safe location.

For information about backing up the database, see [Chapter 14, "Database Maintenance," on page 167](#).

- 2 At a command prompt on the ZENworks Server, enter the following command:

```
zman zenserver-backup path_to_backup_file_to_create
```

For example:

```
zman zenserver-backup c:\zcm_backups\zone_backup.bak
```

or

```
zman zenserver-backup /root/zcm_backups/zone_backup.bak
```

- 3 When prompted, enter a ZENworks administrator name and password.
- 4 When prompted, enter a passphrase (at least 10 characters) to be used for encrypting the backup file.

Make sure you remember this passphrase. You must enter it if you ever need to restore the server.

- 5 (Conditional) If you only have one Primary Server in your Management Zone, manually back up your content repository to a safe location.

For information on the content repository, see [Chapter 7, “Content Repository,” on page 81](#).

IMPORTANT: If you do not back up your content repository when you only have one Primary Server in your zone, you will not be prepared for a full disaster recovery.

- 6 Repeat [Step 1](#) and [Step 5](#) on a regular basis.

The zman command documented in [Step 2](#) through [Step 4](#) only needs to be run once.

15.2 Restoring a ZENworks Server

This procedure assumes the following:

- ♦ You have a backup of the ZENworks Server’s configuration information. See [Section 15.1, “Backing Up a ZENworks Server,” on page 191](#).
- ♦ If the ZENworks database resides on the ZENworks Server, you have a backup of the database. See [Section 14.3, “Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,” on page 169](#).
- ♦ The bundles and policies that are stored on the ZENworks Server have been replicated to other ZENworks Servers. If not, distribution of a policy or bundle from the restored ZENworks Server will fail.
- ♦ The image files that are stored on the ZENworks Server are available on another ZENworks Server. If not, distribution of the image files from the restored ZENworks Server will fail.

To restore a ZENworks server:

- 1 Reinstall the ZENworks Server using the same IP address and DNS name.

If you do not use the same IP address and DNS name, any devices that connect to the server need to reregister.

If you have only one Primary Server connected to an external database in a zone, reinstall the Primary server and create a dummy database during the installation. You need not create an internal database.

If you have more than one Primary server connected to an external database in a zone, reinstall the failed Primary server as a second Primary Server. You are not prompted to configure the database during the installation.

- 2 Ensure that you have read/write rights to the `Novell\ZENworks\conf` directory on a Windows server or the `etc/opt/novell/zenworks` directory on a Linux server.
- 3 At a command prompt on the ZENworks Server, enter the following command:


```
zman zenserver-restore path_to_backup_file_to_restore
```

For example:

```
zman zenserver-restore c:\zcm_backups\zone_backup.bak
```

or

```
zman zenserver-restore /root/zcm_backups/zone_backup.bak
```

- 4 When prompted, enter a ZENworks administrator name and password.
- 5 When prompted, enter the passphrase (at least 10 characters) to be used for decrypting the backup file.
This is the same passphrase that was entered to encrypt the file when backing up the server.
- 6 (Conditional) If the database is located on the server, restore the database after the ZENworks Server information has been restored. For instructions, see [Section 14.4, “Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,” on page 175](#).
- 7 (Conditional) If you have backups of the image files, restore the files to the Novell\Zenworks\work\content-repo\images directory on a Windows server or the /var/opt/novell/zenworks/content-repo/images directory on a Linux server.
- 8 Restart the ZENworks Server.

15.3 Backing Up the Certificate Authority

To back up the Certificate Authority files on the Primary Server that is configured to be the ZENworks internal Certificate Authority:

- 1 At the command prompt of the ZENworks Server, enter the following command:

```
zman certificate-authority-export (certificate-authority-export/cae) [options] (file path)
```

This command exports the key-pair credentials of the zone certificate authority to a file. For more information about zman Certificate Authority commands, see “[zman\(1\)](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

- 2 Enter the username and password of the administrator of the Management Zone.
- 3 Enter a passphrase for the file encryption.

The passphrase is used in the encryption of the backed-up file.

IMPORTANT: Note down the passphrase used for the file encryption.

15.4 Restoring the Certificate Authority

To restore the Certificate Authority files on the Primary Server that is configured to be the ZENworks internal Certificate Authority:

- 1 At the command prompt of the ZENworks Server, enter the following zman command:

```
zman certificate-authority-import (certificate-authority-import/cai) (file path)
```

This command imports the key-pair credentials of the zone certificate authority from a file. For more information about zman Certificate Authority commands, see “[zman\(1\)](#)” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference*.

- 2** Enter the username and password of the administrator of the Management Zone.
- 3** Enter the file encryption passphrase you specified when you backed up the Certificate Authority files (**Step 3** in [Section 15.3, “Backing Up the Certificate Authority,”](#) on page 193).

System variables let you define variables that can be used to replace paths, names, and so forth as you enter information in ZENworks® Control Center.

You can define system variables at three levels:

- ♦ **Management Zone:** The system variables are inherited by all device folders, devices, and bundles.
- ♦ **Device Folder:** The system variables are inherited by all devices contained within the folder or its subfolders.
- ♦ **Device or Bundle:** The system variables apply only to the device or bundle for which they are configured.

The following sections contain more information:

- ♦ [Section 16.1, “Understanding System Variables,” on page 195](#)
- ♦ [Section 16.2, “Adding System Variables,” on page 196](#)
- ♦ [Section 16.3, “Removing System Variables,” on page 197](#)
- ♦ [Section 16.4, “Editing System Variables,” on page 197](#)
- ♦ [Section 16.5, “Using System Variables,” on page 197](#)

16.1 Understanding System Variables

The following examples illustrate some uses of system variables:

- ♦ **Specifying Paths and Filenames in Actions:** When you create an Edit INI File action, for example, you specify a `.ini` file and configure the changes to be performed on that file. During the creation process, you can specify the full path to the file (for example, `C:\Program Files\OpenOffice.org 2.0\program\setup.ini`).

Instead of specifying the entire path and filename, you can create a system variable. For example, the name of the variable can be `OpenOffice INI` and the value can be the full path to the file. Now, instead of specifying the full path and filename when you create the action, you can type `${OpenOffice INI}` in the *Filename* field.

An advantage of using a system variable rather than typing the full path and filename is that you can specify this particular `.ini` file in many different types of actions. Suppose that the location of the `.ini` file changes. Instead of editing the path in each action, you can edit the path in the system variable and all the actions still point to the correct path.

You can generalize the path even more by creating a system variable named `ProgramFiles` with the value of `C:\program files`. In the future, when you specify a path, you can type `${ProgramFiles}` and then specify the remaining path to the specific file. For example,

`${ProgramFiles}\OpenOffice 2.0\program\setup.ini`. Again, if the path to the `C:\program files` directory changes in the future, you only need to change the path in the system variable, rather than in each bundle that uses that location in a path.

- ♦ **Overriding Inherited Settings:** When configuring system variables for a folder, device, or bundle, you can override an inherited variable by defining a new variable with the same name but a different value. For example, if `ProgramFiles=C:\` is defined at the Management Zone, you can override it by defining `ProgramFiles=D:\` at the device folder level or at the device or bundle.

You can use a system variable when creating one bundle. Depending on the location of the targeted device object in the folder hierarchy, the value can be different.

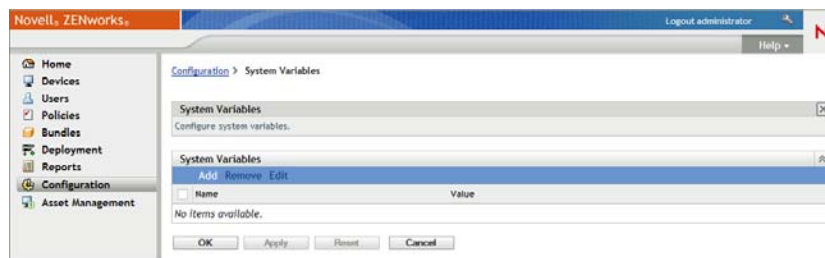
For example, suppose that all of your applications are installed in `C:\program files` except for specific applications used by the accounting department, which are installed in `D:\program files`. You define the `ProgramFiles` variable at the Management Zone level to point to `C:\program files`. For the accounting applications, you create a device folder called `Accounting Department` to contain the devices in the accounting department. You can set the value for the `ProgramFiles` variable to `D:\program files` on the `Accounting Department` device folder level. When the same bundle is applied to devices, the path to the program files directory is on the `C:\` drive for all targeted devices except for those contained in the `Accounting Department` device folder. For those devices, the program files directory points to the `D:\` drive.

16.2 Adding System Variables

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.



- 2 In the Management Zone Settings list, click *Content*.
- 3 Click *System Variables*.



- 4 Click *Add*, provide the name and value for the variable, then click *OK*.

When configuring system variables for a folder, device, or bundle, you can override an inherited variable by defining a new variable with the same name but a different value. For example, if `Var1=c:\` is inherited, you can override it by defining `Var1=d:\`.

Variable names cannot include spaces and must be unique at the level where they are defined. For example, you cannot have two variables named `Var1` defined at the device level (unless one is inherited, in which case the device-level variable overrides the inherited variable).

- 5 Click *Apply*.

16.3 Removing System Variables

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the *Management Zone Settings* list, click *Content*.
- 3 Click *System Variables*.
- 4 Select the check box next to the variable (or variables).
- 5 Click *Remove*.
- 6 Click *Apply*.

16.4 Editing System Variables

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.
- 2 In the *Management Zone Settings* list, click *Content*.
- 3 Click *System Variables*.
- 4 Select the check box next to the variable, then click *Edit*.
- 5 Modify the *Name* and *Value* fields as desired, then click *OK*.
- 6 Click *Apply*.

16.5 Using System Variables

- 1 Use the following syntax:

`${ VAR_NAME }`

Replace `VAR_NAME` with the name of the variable.

The following sections explain the disaster recovery mechanisms available in Novell® ZENworks® 10 Configuration Management that help you protect the first Primary Server of a Management Zone if an organizational risk assessment identifies a need for such steps:

- ♦ [Section 17.1, “Replacing the First Primary Server with the Second Primary Server,” on page 199](#)
- ♦ [Section 17.2, “Replacing an Existing Primary Server with a New Primary Server,” on page 202](#)

17.1 Replacing the First Primary Server with the Second Primary Server

You can replace the first Primary Server in your Management Zone with an existing second Primary Server or with a new server. If you choose to replace the first Primary Server with a new server that has a different hostname and IP address, you must install ZENworks 10 Configuration Management on the new server in the same Management Zone. Consequently, the new server becomes the second Primary Server.

NOTE: This has been tested on the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 10 32-bit platform.

To replace the first Primary Server with the second Primary Server:

- 1** Make sure that all the contents of the `content-repo` directory of the first Primary Server are replicated to the second Primary Server.

The `content-repo` directory is located in the `ZENworks_installation_directory\work\` directory on Windows and in the `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux.

- 2** (Conditional) If the first Primary Server has add-on images:

- 2a** In ZENworks Control Center for the second Primary Server, click the *Bundles* tab, then click the Imaging bundle.


The *Summary* tab is displayed.

- 2b** Click *Edit* next to *Add-on Image File*.

The Bundle Add-on Image wizard is displayed.

- 2c** On the *Add Image Server Address* page, select the first Primary Server that is associated with the bundle, then click *Remove*.

- 2d** Click *Add*.

- 2e** Click  next to the *Servers* folder to navigate through the folders until you find the second Primary Server.

- 2f** Select the second Primary Server to display its name in the *Selected* list, then click *OK*.

- 2g** Click *Finish*.


```
zman dgc -U administrator_name -P administrator_password
```

or

```
zman database-get-credentials -U administrator_name -P  
administrator_password
```

To procure the credentials of the external database, contact the database administrator.

6c Remove the database role from the first Primary Server:

6c1 Log into the database.

6c2 In the SQL editor, execute the following SQL query to remove the database role entry for the first Primary Server from the `zZENServerRoles` table:

```
delete from zZENServerRoles where Roles='Database';
```

6c3 In the SQL editor, execute the following SQL command:

```
commit;
```

6d Move the database.

Internal Sybase: For detailed information on how to move the data from an internal Sybase database to an external Sybase database, see [Section 14.5, “Moving the Data from an Embedded Sybase Database to an External Sybase Database,”](#) on page 177.

External Sybase: For detailed information on how to move the data from one external Sybase database to another external Sybase database, see [Section 14.6, “Moving the Data from One External Sybase Database to another External Sybase Database,”](#) on page 178.

MS SQL: For detailed information on how to move the data to a new MS SQL database, see the MS SQL documentation. Later on, perform the steps described in [Section 14.8, “Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New MS SQL Database Containing Data Moved from Another MS SQL Database,”](#) on page 187.

Oracle: For detailed information on how to move the data from one Oracle database to another Oracle database, see the Oracle documentation. Later on, perform the steps described in [Section 14.9, “Configuring the ZENworks Server to Point to the New Oracle Database Containing Data Moved from Another Oracle Database,”](#) on page 188.

7 Remove all Satellites from the Server Hierarchy.

For more information on how to remove the Satellites from the Server Hierarchy listing in ZENworks Control Center, see [Section 4.3, “Removing Satellites from the Server Hierarchy,”](#) on page 55.

8 Retire the first Primary Server by entering one of the following commands at the server prompt:

```
zman zsd primary_server_object_name
```

or

```
zman zenserver-delete primary_server_object_name
```

For more information about `zman`, view the `zman` man page (`man zman`) on the server or see “`zman(1)`” in the [ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Command Line Utilities Reference](#).

9 Uninstall ZENworks 10 Configuration Management on the first Primary Server.

For detailed information on how to uninstall ZENworks 10 Configuration Management, see “[Uninstalling ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP2](#)” in the [ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide](#).

17.2 Replacing an Existing Primary Server with a New Primary Server

If you have only one Primary Server in the Management Zone and if you want to replace the device hosting the Primary Server with a new device that has the same hostname and IP address as the old device, you must move the Primary Server to the new device.

NOTE: This has been tested on the Windows Server 2003 (32-bit) and Windows Server 2008 (32-bit) platforms.

- 1 Take a reliable backup of the existing ZENworks Server.
For detail information on how to take a backup of the ZENworks Server, see [Section 15.1, “Backing Up a ZENworks Server,” on page 191](#).
- 2 Take a reliable backup of the Certificate Authority of the Primary Server.
For detail information on how to take a backup of the Certificate Authority, see [Section 15.3, “Backing Up the Certificate Authority,” on page 193](#).
- 3 (Conditional) Take a reliable backup of database in any of the following scenarios:
 - ♦ You are using an internal ZENworks database (embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere).
 - ♦ You are using an external database installed on the device hosting the Primary Server and you do not plan to use the device after uninstalling the Primary Server.For detailed information on how to take a backup of an internal database, see [Section 14.3, “Backing Up the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,” on page 169](#).
To take a backup of an external database, see the documentation for the database.
- 4 Stop all the ZENworks services on the Primary Server.
For detailed information on how to stop the ZENworks services on Windows, see [Section 3.1.3, “Stopping a ZENworks Service,” on page 46](#). For detailed information on how to stop the ZENworks services on Linux, see [Section 3.2.3, “Stopping a ZENworks Service,” on page 48](#).
- 5 Take a reliable backup of the `content-repo` directory of the Primary Server.
The `content-repo` directory is located in the `ZENworks_installation_directory\work\` directory on Windows and in the `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux.
- 6 Disconnect the device from the network.
- 7 Ensure that the hostname and the IP address of the new server is same as that of the old Primary Server.
- 8 Install ZENworks 10 Configuration Management on the new server with the same Management Zone name as that of the old Primary Server.
For detailed information on how to install ZENworks 10 Configuration Management, see [“Installing ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP2” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*](#).
- 9 Do the following on the new Primary Server:
 - 9a Restore the backed-up ZENworks Server.
For detailed information on how to restore the ZENworks Server, see [Section 15.2, “Restoring a ZENworks Server,” on page 192](#).

- 9b** Restore the backed-up Certificate Authority.
For detailed information on how to restore the Certificate Authority, see [Section 15.4, “Restoring the Certificate Authority,” on page 193.](#)
- 9c** (Conditional) Restore the backed-up database.
For detailed information on how to restore the internal ZENworks database, see [Section 14.4, “Restoring the Embedded Sybase SQL Anywhere Database,” on page 175.](#)
- 9d** Copy the backed-up `content-repo` directory to the `ZENworks_installation_directory\work\` directory on Windows or to the `/var/opt/novell/zenworks/` directory on Linux.
- 10** Ensure that the new server is running correctly. Subsequently, uninstall ZENworks Configuration Management from the old device.
For detailed information on how to uninstall ZENworks 10 Configuration Management see [“Uninstalling ZENworks 10 Configuration Management SP2” in the *ZENworks 10 Configuration Management Installation Guide*.](#)

Management Zone Configuration Settings

A

The Management Zone configuration settings enable you to control a wide range of functionality for your zone. For example, there are Content settings that let you control when content can be distributed to devices and how often content is replicated between ZENworks® Servers (if you have multiple servers). There are Device Management settings that let you control how often devices access a ZENworks Server for refreshed information, how often dynamic groups are refreshed, and what levels of messages (informational, warning, or error) are logged by the ZENworks Adaptive Agent. There are Inventory settings, Discovery and Deployment settings, and much more.

The configuration settings are grouped into categories:

- ♦ [Section A.1, “Accessing Configuration Settings,” on page 205](#)
- ♦ [Section A.2, “Content Settings,” on page 209](#)
- ♦ [Section A.3, “Device Management Settings,” on page 209](#)
- ♦ [Section A.4, “Discovery and Deployment Settings,” on page 210](#)
- ♦ [Section A.5, “Event and Messaging Settings,” on page 211](#)
- ♦ [Section A.6, “Infrastructure Management Settings,” on page 211](#)
- ♦ [Section A.7, “Inventory Settings,” on page 211](#)
- ♦ [Section A.8, “Reporting Services Settings,” on page 212](#)
- ♦ [Section A.9, “Asset Management Settings,” on page 213](#)
- ♦ [Section A.10, “Patch Management Services Settings,” on page 213](#)

A.1 Accessing Configuration Settings

Management Zone settings that apply to devices are inherited by all devices in the zone. You can override zone settings by configuring them on device folders or on individual devices. This allows you to establish zone settings that apply to the largest number of devices and then, as necessary, override the settings on folders and devices.

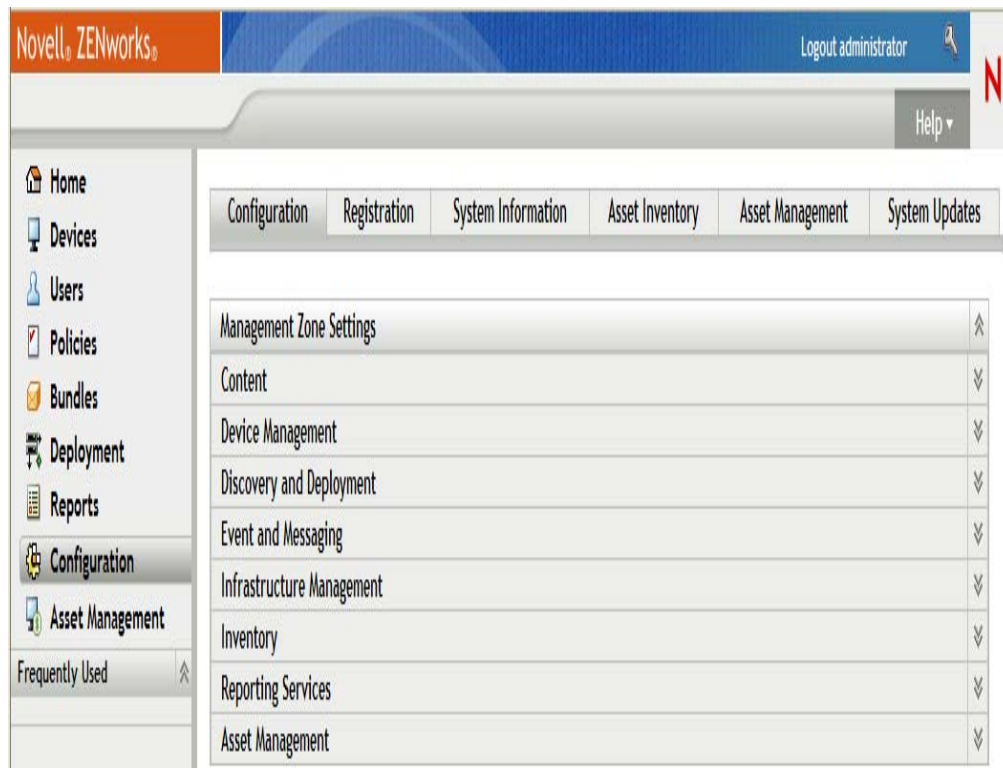
By default, your zone settings are preconfigured with values that provide common functionality. You can, however, change the settings to best adapt them to the behavior you need in your environment.

- ♦ [Section A.1.1, “Modifying Configuration Settings at the Zone,” on page 205](#)
- ♦ [Section A.1.2, “Modifying Configuration Settings on a Folder,” on page 207](#)
- ♦ [Section A.1.3, “Modifying Configuration Settings on a Device,” on page 208](#)

A.1.1 Modifying Configuration Settings at the Zone

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Configuration* tab.

- 2 In the Management Zone Settings panel, click the settings category (*Content, Device Management, Discovery and Deployment, Event and Messaging, and so forth*) whose settings you want to modify.



- 3 Click the setting to display its details page.
4 Modify the setting as desired.

For information about the setting, click the *Help* button in ZENworks Control Center or see the following sections:

- ♦ “Content Settings” on page 209
 - ♦ “Device Management Settings” on page 209
 - ♦ “Discovery and Deployment Settings” on page 210
 - ♦ “Event and Messaging Settings” on page 211
 - ♦ “Infrastructure Management Settings” on page 211
 - ♦ “Inventory Settings” on page 211
 - ♦ “Reporting Services Settings” on page 212
 - ♦ “Asset Management Settings” on page 213
 - ♦ “Patch Management Services Settings” on page 213
- 5 When you have finished modifying the setting, click *OK* (or *Apply*) to save your changes.
- If the configuration setting applies to devices, the setting is inherited by all devices in the zone unless the setting is overridden at a folder level or a device level.

A.1.2 Modifying Configuration Settings on a Folder

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Devices* tab.
- 2 In the Devices panel (on the *Managed* tab), browse for the folder whose settings you want to modify.
- 3 When you've found the folder, click *Details* next to the folder name to display the folder's details.
- 4 Click the *Settings* tab.
- 5 In the Settings panel, click the settings category (*Content*, *Device Management*, and so forth) whose settings you want to modify.

[Devices](#) > Workstations

 Workstations

Summary		Relationships	Settings
Settings			
Content			⌵
Device Management			⌴
Category	Description	Inherited From	
Device Refresh Schedule	Configure the device refresh interval.	(System)	
Local Device Logging	Enable and configure local logging of warnings and errors encountered by managed devices.	(System)	
Device Dynamic Rename	Enables automatic renaming of devices.	(System)	
Preboot Services	Configure Preboot Services.	(System)	
Remote Management	Enable and configure remote management.	(System)	
Primary User	Configure the setting for how the primary user is determined.	---	
Registration	Configure registration settings.	(System)	
Enable/Disable Managed Device Agents	Configure whether each agent on a managed device is enabled.	(System)	
Infrastructure Management			⌵
Inventory			⌵
Asset Management			⌵

- 6 Click the setting to display its details page.
- 7 Modify the setting as desired.

For information about the setting, click the *Help* button in ZENworks Control Center or see the following sections:

- ♦ “Content Settings” on page 209
- ♦ “Device Management Settings” on page 209
- ♦ “Discovery and Deployment Settings” on page 210
- ♦ “Event and Messaging Settings” on page 211
- ♦ “Infrastructure Management Settings” on page 211
- ♦ “Inventory Settings” on page 211
- ♦ “Reporting Services Settings” on page 212

- ♦ “Asset Management Settings” on page 213
 - ♦ “Patch Management Services Settings” on page 213
- 8 When you have finished modifying the setting, click *OK* (or *Apply*) to save your changes.
- The configuration setting is inherited by all devices in the folder, including any devices contained in subfolders, unless the setting is overridden on a subfolder or individual device.

A.1.3 Modifying Configuration Settings on a Device

- 1 In ZENworks Control Center, click the *Devices* tab.
- 2 In the Devices panel (on the *Managed* tab), browse for the device whose settings you want to modify.
- 3 When you’ve found the device, click the device name to display the its details.
- 4 Click the *Settings* tab.
- 5 In the Settings panel, click the settings category (*Content*, *Device Management*, and so forth) whose settings you want to modify.

[Devices](#) > [Servers](#) > zendoc1a

 zendoc1a

Summary	Inventory	Relationships	Settings	Content	Statistics	Vulnerabilities
---------	-----------	---------------	----------	---------	------------	-----------------

Settings		
Content		⌵
Device Management		⌶
Category	Description	Inherited From
Device Refresh Schedule	Configure the refresh interval for this device.	(System)
Local Device Logging	Enable and configure local logging of warnings and errors encountered by this device.	(System)
Preboot Services	Configure Preboot Services for this device. Unless you choose to override settings, the values specified in the system configuration, or in individual folder settings, will be used.	(System)
Remote Management	Enable and configure remote management for this device.	(System)
Primary User	Configure the setting for how the primary user is determined.	---
Adaptive Agent Throttling	Configures the throttling rate of downloaded and replicated content for the ZENworks Adaptive Agent.	---
Enable/Disable Managed Device Agents	Configure whether each agent on a managed device is enabled.	(System)
Infrastructure Management		⌵
Inventory		⌵
Asset Management		⌵

- 6 Click the setting to display its details page.
 - 7 Modify the setting as desired.
- For information about the setting, click the *Help* button in ZENworks Control Center or see the following sections:
- ♦ “Content Settings” on page 209

- ♦ “Device Management Settings” on page 209
- ♦ “Discovery and Deployment Settings” on page 210
- ♦ “Event and Messaging Settings” on page 211
- ♦ “Infrastructure Management Settings” on page 211
- ♦ “Inventory Settings” on page 211
- ♦ “Reporting Services Settings” on page 212
- ♦ “Asset Management Settings” on page 213
- ♦ “Patch Management Services Settings” on page 213

8 When you have finished modifying the setting, click *OK* (or *Apply*) to save your changes.

A.2 Content Settings

The Content section contains the following settings:

Content Blackout Schedule: Define times when content (bundles, policies, configuration settings, and so forth) is not delivered to devices. For more information, see [Content Blackout Schedule \(../resources/help/settings_sysreplication.html\)](#).

Content Replication: Determine how often content (bundle and policy files) is updated on the ZENworks Primary Servers and Satellite Servers. For more information, see [Content Replication \(../resources/help/settings_contentreplication.html\)](#).

A.3 Device Management Settings

The Device Management section contains the following settings:

Local Device Logging: Configure logging of messages to a managed device’s local drive. You can determine what severity level messages are logged and when the log file is backed up. You can also determine what severity level messages are sent to the ZENworks server for viewing in ZENworks Control Center. For more information, see [Local Device Logging \(../resources/help/settings_syslocallogging.html\)](#).

Device Refresh Schedule: Specify how often a device contacts a ZENworks Server to update bundle, policy, configuration, and registration information. You can also specify what to do with a device when it has not contacted a ZENworks Server within a certain number of days. For more information, see [Device Refresh Schedule \(../resources/help/settings_sysrefreshsched.html\)](#).

ZENworks Agent: Configure uninstall and caching settings for the ZENworks Adaptive Agent as well as enable or disable specific Adaptive Agent modules. For more information, see [ZENworks Agent \(../resources/help/settings_agent.html\)](#).

Registration: Control the settings used when registering devices, including how registered devices are named, whether registration rules are enabled, and whether device objects in ZENworks Control Center can be renamed as they update their registration information. For more information, see [Registration \(../resources/help/settings_registration.html\)](#).

ZENworks Explorer Configuration: Configure common settings for ZENworks Explorer component of the ZENworks Adaptive Agent. You can select whether or not you want a bundle to be uninstalled after it is no longer assigned to a device or the device’s user. You can also rename the

default folder in Windows Explorer, on the Start menu, and in the ZENworks Window where all bundles are placed. For more information, see [ZENworks Explorer Configuration \(../resources/help/settings_applicationbundles.html\)](#).

System Variables: Define variables that can be used to replace paths, names, and so forth as you enter information in ZENworks Control Center. For more information, see [System Variables \(../resources/help/settings_systemvariables.html\)](#).

Preboot Services: Configure settings for devices that use Preboot Services. For more information, see [Preboot Services \(../resources/help/settings_sysimaging.html\)](#).

Primary User: Determine how and when a device's primary user is calculated. For more information, see [Primary User \(../resources/help/settings_primaryuser.html\)](#).

Primary Workstation: Determine how and when a device's primary workstation is calculated. For more information, see [Primary Workstation \(../resources/help/settings_primaryws.html\)](#).

Dynamic Group Refresh Schedule: Determine how often a dynamic group's criteria are applied to devices in order to update membership in the group. Membership in a dynamic group is determined by applying the dynamic group's criteria to devices. If a device meets the criteria, it is added to the group; you cannot manually add devices to a dynamic group or remove them from a dynamic group. For more information, see [Dynamic Group Refresh Schedule \(../resources/help/settings_dynamicgroupschedule.html\)](#).

Wake-on-LAN: Configure the number of retry attempts to wake up a device and the time interval between the retry attempts. For more information, see [Wake-on-LAN \(../resources/help/settings_wakeonlan.html\)](#).

Remote Management: Configure Remote Management settings, which are a set of rules that determine the behavior or the execution of the Remote Management service on the managed device. For more information, see [Remote Management \(../resources/help/settings_sysremotemanagement.html\)](#).

A.4 Discovery and Deployment Settings

The Discovery and Deployment section contains the following settings:

Advertised Discovery Settings: Specify how often you want your ZENworks system to attempt to discover devices on your network that have the ZENworks pre-agent installed. For more information, see [Advertised Discovery Settings \(../resources/help/settings_discovery_advertised.html\)](#).

Discovery: Control the settings used during the discovery processes, including the maximum number of discovery requests that can be running at one time and the technologies to use for the discovery. You can also specify IP and SNMP settings used by the WMI (Windows Management Instrumentation) and SNMP discovery technologies. For more information, see [Discovery \(../resources/help/settings_discoverysettings.html\)](#).

Windows Proxy: Specify a managed Windows device in your zone to perform discovery and deployment tasks in place of a ZENworks Server. This is designed primarily to enable ZENworks Servers running on Linux to offload discovery tasks that use Windows-specific discovery technologies such as WMI and WinAPI and deployment tasks that involve Windows managed devices. For more information, see [Windows Proxy \(../resources/help/settings_winproxysettings.html\)](#).

A.5 Event and Messaging Settings

The Event and Messaging section contains the following settings:

Centralized Message Logging: Configure the settings related to message logging performed by the Primary Server, including automatic message cleanup, e-mail notification, SNMP traps, and UDP forwarding. For more information, see [Centralized Message Logging \(../resources/help/settings_syscentralizedlogging.html\)](#).

SMTP Settings: Configure the SMTP server for sending the e-mail notifications to ZENworks administrators. For more information, see [SMTP Settings \(../resources/help/settings_smtpsettings.html\)](#).

A.6 Infrastructure Management Settings

The Infrastructure Management section contains the following settings:

Closest Server Default Rule: Define the rule that is used by a device to determine the closest collection, content, and configuration servers when no Closest Server rules have been defined or when none apply. This rule is simply a listing of the servers in the order you want devices to contact them. You cannot add or remove servers from the lists. For more information, see [Closest Server Default Rule \(../resources/help/settings_closestserverdefaultrule.html\)](#).

Closest Server Rules: Create rules that are used to determine which servers a device contacts for the collection, content, and configuration functions, if your ZENworks Management Zone includes more than one server. For more information, see [Closest Server Rules \(../resources/help/settings_closestserverrules.html\)](#).

HTTP Proxy Settings: Define proxy servers you want to use. A proxy server lets a device connect indirectly to a ZENworks Server through the proxy server. The device's ZENworks Adaptive Agent connects to the proxy server, then requests resources from a ZENworks Server. The proxy provides the resource either by connecting to the ZENworks Server or by serving it from a cache. For more information, see [HTTP Proxy Settings \(../resources/help/settings_httpproxy.html\)](#).

System Update Settings: Configure how you want to use the System Updates feature, including how often to check for updates, specifying a download schedule, configuring e-mail notifications, and more. For more information, see [System Update Settings \(../resources/help/settings_systemupdate.html\)](#).

ZENworks News Settings: Configures the server and the schedule for downloading the ZENworks News. For more information, see [ZENworks News Settings \(../resources/help/settings_zenworksnews.html\)](#).

A.7 Inventory Settings

The Inventory section contains the following settings:

Inventory: Configure inventory scanning settings, including on-demand scans, first scans, and recurring scans. You can also specify directories to skip when performing scans and identify software applications that are not contained in the ZENworks Knowledgebase. For more information, see [Inventory \(../resources/help/settings_sysinventory.html\)](#).

Inventory Schedule: Specify when to run an inventory scan, including specifying that scans do not run automatically or specifying a date-specific, recurring, or event-driven scan. For more information, see [Inventory Schedule \(../../resources/help/settings_sysinventoryschedule.html\)](#).

Collection Data Form: Configure which demographic data to collect for a device or devices, such as a user's name or telephone, which department the user belongs to, and so on. For more information, see [Collection Data Form \(../../resources/help/settings_sysinventorycollectwizard.html\)](#).

Collection Data Form Schedule: Configure how you send out the Collection Data Form. You can schedule it as part of a regular inventory scan, you can use a Device Quick Task, or you can use the Collection Data Form Schedule. For more information, see [Collection Data Form Schedule \(../../resources/help/settings_sysinventorywizardschedule.html\)](#).

Inventory Only: Configure inventory scan settings for devices in the zone that don't have the ZENworks Adaptive Agent installed but do have the Inventory Module installed. This type of scan is useful for devices running Windows NT, Windows 95, Windows 98, Windows Me, NetWare, and Mac OS* X. For more information, see [Inventory Only \(../../resources/help/settings_sysumi.html\)](#).

Inventory Only Schedule: Configure when to run an Inventory Only scan. For more information, see [Inventory Only Schedule \(../../resources/help/settings_sysumischedule.html\)](#).

Inventory Only Reconciliation: Control whether and how new workstations are reconciled to avoid the possibility of duplicates in the database. When a scan is made of a workstation that is new to the Management Zone, it is assigned an identifier. If the identifier is lost, such as by a disk crash, it is assigned a new identifier during the next scan. Reconciliation allows you to check whether the workstation is already in the database. If it is, the identifier in the database is changed to match the new identifier. For more information, see [Inventory Only Reconciliation \(../../resources/help/settings_sysinventoryreconcile.html\)](#).

A.8 Reporting Services Settings

The Reporting Services section contains the following settings:

E-mail Notification Settings: Configure the ZENworks Reporting Server for sending e-mail notifications to the ZENworks administrator. For more information, see [E-mail Notification Settings \(../../resources/help/cfg_mzset_reptsrv_set.html\)](#).

Folder Sync Schedule: Define the refresh interval when the Custom Report folders that are created in the BusinessObjects Enterprise* Infoview must synchronize with the ZENworks Control Center. For more information, see [Folder Sync Schedule \(../../resources/help/cfg_report_foldersync.html\)](#).

Reset the Passphrase of the ZENworks Reporting Server: Allow the user to reset the Passphrase of the ZENworks Reporting Server. For more information, see [Reset the Passphrase \(../../resources/help/cfg_report_resetpassphrase.html\)](#).

File Location Notification Settings: Specify the destination directory for the report instances on the ZENworks Reporting Server or on any other remote server. For more information, see [File Location Notification Settings \(../../resources/help/cfg_report_filelocsettings.html\)](#).

FTP Server Notification Settings: Specify the destination on the FTP server where you want to transfer the reporting instances. For more information, see [FTP Server Notification Settings \(../../resources/help/cfg_report_ftpsrvrsettings.html\)](#).

A.9 Asset Management Settings

The Asset Management section contains the following settings:

Reports: Configure report settings for Asset Management. For more information, see [Reports \(../resources/help/settings_sysamreport.html\)](#).

Compliance: Set the time of day that license compliance data is refreshed. For more information, see [Compliance \(../resources/help/settings_sysamcompliance.html\)](#).

Usage Monitoring: Configure Asset Management usage monitoring settings. For more information, see [Usage \(../resources/help/settings_amusage.html\)](#).

Usage Display: Configure Asset Management usage display settings. For more information, see [Compliance \(../resources/help/settings_amusage.html\)](#).

A.10 Patch Management Services Settings

The Patch Management Services section contains the following settings:

Subscription Service Information: Display information about your subscription, including the status. You can also update your subscription settings. For more information, see [Subscription Service Information \(../resources/help/b9f6zcf.html\)](#).

Product Serial Number: View and verify the patch management subscription for the ZENworks primary server. The page also allows you to activate or renew your paid subscription in case it has expired. The page provides a summary of all subscription elements that are part of your patch management activities. For more information, see [Product Serial Number \(../resources/help/b9f92rl.html\)](#).

Configure HTTP Proxy: Configure an HTTP proxy for access to Internet patch subscription. The HTTP proxy server allows ZENworks Patch Management Services to download subscription service over the Internet. For more information, see [Configure HTTP Proxy \(../resources/help/b9f9hi0.html\)](#).

Subscription Download: Configure the subscription download options for the ZENworks primary server. For more information, see [Subscription Download \(../resources/help/b9fa3i3.html\)](#).

Naming Conventions in ZENworks Control Center

B

When you name an object in the ZENworks® Control Center (folders, bundles, bundle groups, and so forth), ensure that the name adheres to the following conventions:

- ♦ The name must be unique in the folder.
- ♦ Depending on the database being used for the ZENworks database, uppercase and lowercase letters might not create uniqueness for the same name. The embedded database included with ZENworks 10 Configuration Management is case insensitive, so Folder 1 and FOLDER 1 are the same name and cannot be used in the same folder. If you use an external database that is case-sensitive, Folder 1 and FOLDER 1 are unique.
- ♦ If you use spaces, you must enclose the name in quotes when entering it on the command line. For example, you must enclose bundle 1 in quotes (“bundle 1”) when entering it in the zman utility.
- ♦ The following characters are invalid and cannot be used: / \ * ? : " ' < > | ` % ~